



ASTON MARTIN

*V8 Vantage*

## Aston Martin Owner's Club

### An invitation to join the Aston Martin Owner's Club

The sporting spirit of the 1930s exists today in one of the world's most exclusive car clubs. Enthusiasts in nearly 60 countries are united by an interest in iconic cars with an enviable pedigree. Enjoy the company of like-minded owners in a wide range of activities: social evenings, weekends away or motoring tours. Something more competitive? AMOC Concours are a benchmark for connoisseurs of fine motorcars. A need for speed? We organise track days, sprints and hill climbs as well as circuit racing in venues such as Silverstone, Goodwood and Lime Rock in the USA.





Mirroring Club activity, the Aston Martin Heritage Trust is an educational charity dedicated to the history of the marque from the earliest days almost a century ago. It shares the magnificent 15thC Oxfordshire barn which is the international headquarters, museum and archive. Why not log onto our website to discover more about these unique organizations, and enjoy a hearty welcome from us all.



The Aston Martin Owners Club  
Drayton St. Leonard,  
Wallingford,  
Oxford,  
England,  
OX10 7BG

Telephone: +44 (0) 1865 400 400

Facsimile: +44 (0) 1865 400 200

E-Mail: [hqstaff@amoc.org](mailto:hqstaff@amoc.org)

Website: [www.amoc.org](http://www.amoc.org)



|                                 |    |
|---------------------------------|----|
| Introduction .....              | 1  |
| Vehicle Security.....           | 2  |
| Before Driving .....            | 3  |
| Controls .....                  | 4  |
| Driving .....                   | 5  |
| Climate Control .....           | 6  |
| Convertible Roof .....          | 7  |
| Audio .....                     | 8  |
| Hands-Free Phone.....           | 9  |
| Satellite Navigation.....       | 10 |
| Maintenance .....               | 11 |
| Specifications .....            | 12 |
| Service .....                   | A  |
| Aston Martin Assistance .....   | B  |
| Aston Martin Warranty .....     | C  |
| Authorised Body Repairers ..... | D  |
| Dealer Directory.....           | E  |
| Alphabetical Index.....         | F  |

Every effort has been made to make sure that the information provided in this Owner's Guide is accurate and up-to-date. However neither the manufacturer or the Dealer, by whom this Owner's Guide is supplied, will in any circumstances be held responsible for any inaccuracy or the consequences thereof. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or other means without prior written permission from Aston Martin Lagonda Limited.

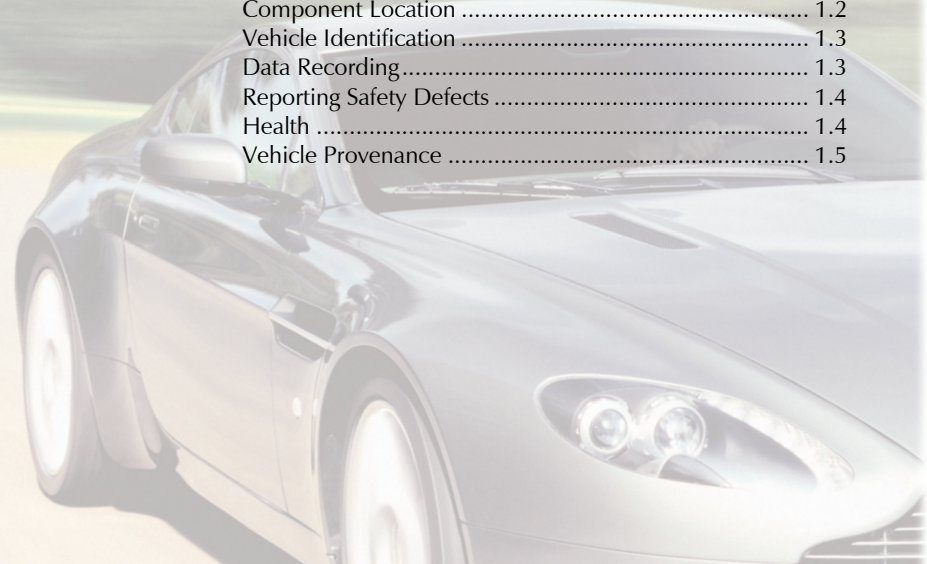
The manufacturer reserves the right to vary specifications without notice in accordance with its policy of continual product improvement.

Produced by the Technical Publications Department  
 ASTON MARTIN LAGONDA LIMITED  
 Banbury Road  
 Gaydon  
 WARWICK  
 Warwickshire  
 CV35 0DB  
 England  
 Telephone: (+44) 01926 644300  
 Fax: (+44) 01926 644733

Issue 9 – December 2010  
 Part Number – BG33-19A321-HB

# Introduction

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Welcome .....                      | 1.2 |
| Warnings, Cautions and Notes ..... | 1.2 |
| Component Location .....           | 1.2 |
| Vehicle Identification .....       | 1.3 |
| Data Recording .....               | 1.3 |
| Reporting Safety Defects .....     | 1.4 |
| Health .....                       | 1.4 |
| Vehicle Provenance .....           | 1.5 |



## Welcome

to your new Aston Martin.

This Owner's Guide, along with other publications included in your literature pack, provides information which will enhance your pleasure from owning and driving your Aston Martin.

This Owner's Guide has been designed to explain the vehicle's operation and to make the control of its systems easy to understand and operate. All new owners are recommended to carefully study the contents of this Owner's Guide prior to driving.

This Owner's Guide forms part of the essential vehicle equipment for homologation purposes and must stay with the vehicle at all times.

## Warnings, Cautions and Notes

The following Warnings, Cautions and Notes are used within this Owner's Guide to call your attention to specific types of information.

### Warnings

**⚠ Warning: *Provided to show procedures which must be followed precisely to help avoid the risk of personal injury.***

### Cautions

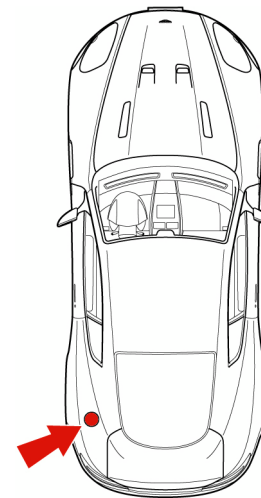
**⚠ *Provided to show procedures which must be followed precisely to reduce the possibility of damage to your vehicle.***

### Notes

**📖 *Provided to show procedures which will help to avoid difficulties in the operation of your vehicle.***

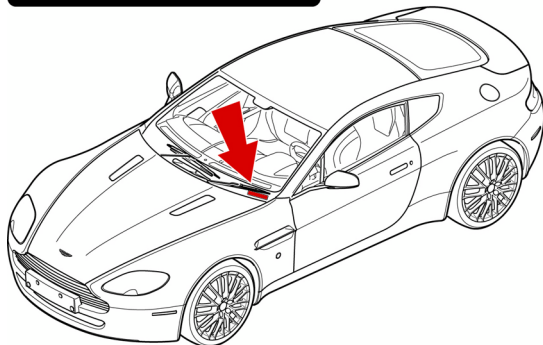
## Component Location

All directions for locating components are described as viewed from the driver's seat, i.e. the fuel filler flap shown on this diagram will be described as 'located at the rear left side of the vehicle'.

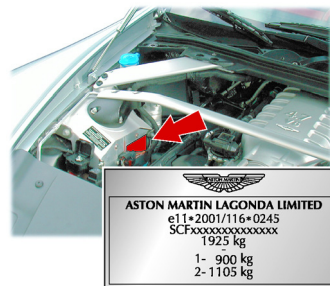


## Vehicle Identification

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is shown in the left side bottom corner of the windshield.



The VIN Plate, attached to the front subframe behind the engine bay front cross member (viewed from above), is model and market dependent:



The vehicle identification number is also stamped into the floorpan in the right side footwell.

 To view the VIN stamped into the floorpan lift the carpet up, from the front, and then lift the sound deadening material.

## Data Recording

Computers in your vehicle are capable of recording detailed data, potentially including but not limited to information such as:

- The use of restraint systems including seat belts by the driver and passengers
- Information about the performance of various systems and modules in the vehicle
- Information related to engine, throttle, steering, brake or other system status

Any of this information could potentially include information regarding how the driver operates the vehicle, potentially including but not limited to information regarding vehicle speed, brake, throttle application or steering input. This information may be stored under regular operation, in a crash or near crash event.

This information may be read out and used by:

- Aston Martin
- Service and repair facilities
- Law enforcement or government agencies
- Others who may assert a right or obtain your consent to know such information

## Reporting Safety Defects

### North America

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc., 9920 Irvine Center Drive, Irvine, CA 92618, USA.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your Dealer, or Aston Martin Lagonda (North America) Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hot-line toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov); or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov).

### Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada in addition to notifying your Aston Martin Dealer. To contact Transport Canada, call their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510

## Health

### CALIFORNIA Proposition 65

**⚠ Warning: Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm.**

### Perchlorate Material

Certain components of this vehicle such as air bag modules, seat belt pre-tensioners and roll over protection devices may contain Perchlorate Material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. Go to [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate) for more information.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your Dealer, or Aston Martin Lagonda (North America) Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hot-line toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov); or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov).

Vehicle Provenance

|                                       |                      |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>Model:</b>                         | <b>First Owner:</b>  |
| e.g. Manual, Automatic                | Selling Dealer       |
| <b>Body Color:</b>                    |                      |
| <b>Interior Color:</b>                | Delivery Date        |
| <b>Fascia Color:</b>                  |                      |
| <b>Vehicle Identification Number:</b> | <b>Second Owner:</b> |
| As on the VIN plate                   | Selling Dealer       |
|                                       |                      |
|                                       | Delivery Date        |

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| <b>Third Owner:</b>  | <b>Fifth Owner:</b> |
| Selling Dealer       | Selling Dealer      |
|                      |                     |
| Delivery Date        | Delivery Date       |
|                      |                     |
| <b>Fourth Owner:</b> | <b>Sixth Owner:</b> |
| Selling Dealer       | Selling Dealer      |
|                      |                     |
| Delivery Date        | Delivery Date       |



ASTON MARTIN



# Vehicle Security

|                            |     |                                 |      |
|----------------------------|-----|---------------------------------|------|
| Introduction .....         | 2.2 | Deadlocking .....               | 2.8  |
| Emotion Control Unit.....  | 2.2 | Automatic Lock.....             | 2.8  |
| Emergency Key .....        | 2.3 | Approach Light .....            | 2.9  |
| Unlocking and Opening..... | 2.4 | Homesafe .....                  | 2.9  |
| Locking.....               | 2.5 | Alarm.....                      | 2.10 |
| Master Locks .....         | 2.6 | Reduced Guard .....             | 2.10 |
| Fuel Flap Release .....    | 2.6 | Passive Anti-Theft System ..... | 2.11 |
| Trunk Lid .....            | 2.7 | Garage Door Opener .....        | 2.12 |
|                            |     | Personalization.....            | 2.15 |

## Introduction

This vehicle is protected by electronic security system which includes:

- Remote arm and disarm
- Perimeter sensing
- Remote door, trunk lid, fuel flap release lock and unlock
- Guard reduction mode
- Alarm siren with battery backup<sup>1</sup>
- Random code encryption to prevent electronic scanning or grabbing of the vehicle key identity code
- Interior movement sensor<sup>2</sup>
- Tilt Sensor<sup>2</sup>.

Vehicle protection is enhanced by a Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) which provides engine immobilization if the wrong vehicle key is used.

When the security system is armed, any attempt to forcibly open a door, the trunk lid or the hood will result in full alarm operation.

## Garage Door Opener

(Option)

As a security precaution make sure that all programming is erased in the HomeLink system before selling this vehicle (Refer to 'Garage Door Opener', page 2.12).

## Emotion Control Unit

The vehicle is supplied with three vehicle keys<sup>3</sup> (Emotion Control Units), a glass key, a spare key and an emergency key.



Keep the spare key in a safe place. Do not leave a vehicle key in the vehicle when unattended.

 If a vehicle key is lost, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

** FCC Warning: 'Note' - Changes not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

---

<sup>1</sup>. Markets where audible sirens are permitted.

<sup>2</sup>. Option.

---

<sup>3</sup>. Manufactured by  STRATTEC. 8D33-70290-BG.

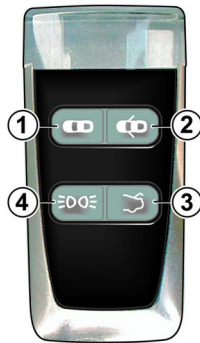
### FCC - Radio Frequency Devices

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### Vehicle Key Security Functions

**[1] LOCK** - Press and release for one step vehicle locking and to arm the security system. The front seats and door rear view mirror positions are memorised. The vehicle will deadlock after 25 seconds.

(Refer to 'Deadlocking', page 2.8)



**[2] UNLOCK** - Press and release to unlock the driver's door only. Press and release twice, within three seconds, to unlock all doors. Press and hold to lower the door windows at the same time.

(Refer to 'Unlocking and Opening', page 2.4)

(Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.4)

**[3] BOOT OPEN** - Press once to release the trunk lid catch (Refer to 'Trunk Lid', page 2.7).

**[4] APPROACH LIGHT** - Press to set the front, rear side and interior lamps to ON (Refer to 'Approach Light', page 2.9).

### Emergency Key

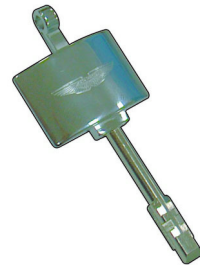
In the unlikely event that either the vehicle key fails to operate or the vehicle battery is fully discharged use the emergency key to lock or unlock the vehicle.

Insert the emergency key in the door lock and turn fully towards the front of the vehicle, then release, to centrally lock the vehicle, disable the trunk lid and fuel flap release switches. The security system will not arm.

To centrally unlock the vehicle, enable the trunk lid and fuel flap release switches, turn fully towards the rear of the vehicle, then release. If the security system was armed, the alarm will start.

To stop the alarm insert the vehicle key (even if the vehicle key has lost all power) into the ignition control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON).

 *If the vehicle battery is fully discharged the emergency key will only lock or unlock a door.*



## Unlocking and Opening

 Even if the vehicle key has lost all power it will start the engine if required.

 *Memory seats<sup>1</sup>*: The front seats and door rear view mirrors will not move to a preset position if the vehicle is unlocked using the emergency key.

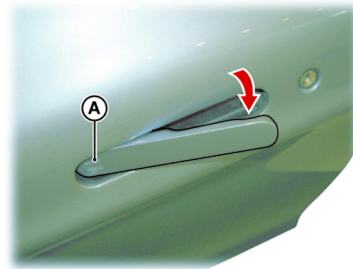
 If the emergency key is lost, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Stand within 16 ft of the vehicle, point the vehicle key towards the vehicle and press the  button once to unlock the drivers door and disarm the security system (the direction indicators will flash twice). Press twice to unlock the passenger door and enable the trunk lid catch and fuel flap release button.

Push at point A and grab the emerging door release. Pull the door release to open the door.

If a door is opened while driving a warning sound will be heard until the door is closed.

 If preferred you can unlock all doors and enable the trunk lid and fuel flap release switches with one press of the button (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.15).



 For ease of use at night white LEDs are incorporated into the door handles. An LED will come ON in the door handles when the vehicle is unlocked. A door LED will go OFF once the door is opened. If a door is not opened the LEDs will go OFF after two minutes.

 If the vehicle has been opened using the spare key and the seats or door rear view mirrors have been adjusted, the seats and door rear view mirrors will move to the positions memorised by the key which is being used (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.4)<sup>2</sup>.

 As the vehicle is unlocked, the interior lamps will come ON for five minutes. The lamps will go OFF 30 seconds after doors are closed or when the vehicle is started.

 If the door is left open the door puddle lamp will go OFF after eight minutes.

<sup>1</sup>. Option.

<sup>2</sup>. Option: Memory Seats.

## Unlocking From Inside the Vehicle

**! If reduced guard was not set to ON before locking the vehicle, deadlocking, interior movement and tilt sensors<sub>1</sub> are enabled. Passengers will not be able to unlock a door from the inside.**

If reduced guard or automatic lock was set to ON before the vehicle was locked, one pull of a door handle will centrally unlock the doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

(Refer to 'Automatic Lock', page 2.8).

(Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.10).

 Vehicle unlock from inside can be set to automatic unlock when the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control. With automatic unlock ON only one pull of a door handle will open that door (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.15).

When opening a door from inside the vehicle after reduced guard has been set to ON, the security system alarm will start. Press the  button on the vehicle key to stop the alarm (there is approximately a ten second delay before the alarm is stopped).

---

<sup>1</sup>. Option.

## Locking

**! If passengers are to stay in the vehicle after it has been locked, reduced guard must be set to ON before locking. This will let a passenger open a door from inside the vehicle.**

Make sure that all the doors, the trunk lid and the hood are closed (the vehicle will not lock if a door is left open). Stand within 16 ft of the vehicle, point the vehicle key towards the vehicle and press the

 button once to lock the doors, disable the trunk lid and fuel flap release switches and arm the security system. The direction indicators will flash once as the security system is armed (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.15).

The front seats and both door rear view mirror positions are memorised and will be recalled the next time the vehicle is opened using the same vehicle key<sub>2</sub>.

 The security system will arm and the doors will deadlock after 25 seconds.

---

<sup>2</sup>. Option: Memory Seats.

 If the vehicle is locked with the trunk lid open, the vehicle will lock and arm but deadlocking, tilt and interior movement sensors<sub>3</sub> will not operate. Close the trunk lid to arm the complete security system.

## Automatic Re-locking

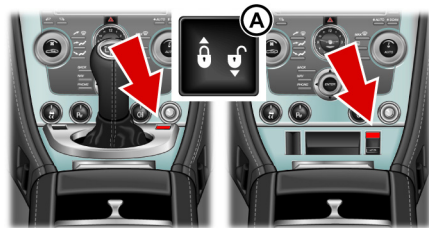
If the vehicle is locked and then unlocked but a door or the trunk lid is not opened within two minutes, the vehicle will automatically lock and arm again.

---

<sup>3</sup>. Option.

## Master Locks

All doors, fuel flap and trunk lid release switches may be locked and unlocked by using the front master lock switch (A). Press the switch to lock. Press again to unlock.



If the vehicle is locked using the master lock switch, one pull of a door handle will centrally unlock the doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

The master lock switch will operate for seven minutes after the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition control, if the vehicle is not locked using the vehicle key.

The master lock switch will not operate if the vehicle has been locked from the outside.

Operation of the master lock switch will override automatic lock (Refer to 'Automatic Lock', page 2.8).

 *When the vehicle is unlocked using the master lock switch the LED in each door handle will come ON (for 10 seconds or until the door is opened). This may aid access for passengers at night time.*

 *In the event of a vehicle accident the doors will automatically unlock.*

## Fuel Flap Release

Push the fuel flap release button (A (located in the driver footwell)) to open the fuel flap.

The fuel flap release is disabled when the vehicle is locked or when the vehicle moves off.



## Trunk Lid

### To Open the Trunk Lid

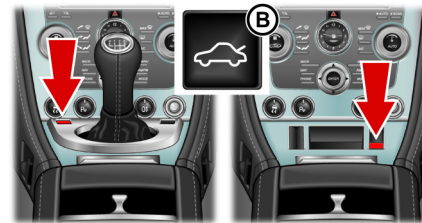
Press the  button on the vehicle key **once** to enable the release catch, then press the trunk lid button (A) and lift the lid. Press the button **twice** (within three seconds) to enable the trunk lid catch and release the lid. Lift the lid.

 If the vehicle is locked and armed the security system will disarm and the direction indicators will flash twice when the trunk is opened. The doors will stay locked (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.15).

### Opening from Inside the Vehicle

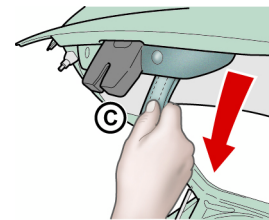
Pull back on the trunk lid release switch (B). The trunk lid catch will release<sup>1</sup>. Lift the lid.

<sup>1</sup>. The trunk lid release switch becomes the roof raise and lower switch on the Roadster.



### To Close the Trunk Lid

Grasp the leather pull (C) and pull the trunk lid down, then push the trunk lid down and make sure that its catch engages. Take care not to slam the trunk lid shut. Press the  button on the vehicle key to lock the lid. The direction indicators will flash once as the security system is armed (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.15).



 Always make sure that the trunk lid is securely closed after use. The trunk interior lamps will stay ON for seven minutes if the trunk lid is left partially open and the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control.

### Vehicle Locked - Trunk Lid Open

 **Do not leave the vehicle key in the trunk. If the trunk lid is closed there will be no access to the contents of the trunk.**

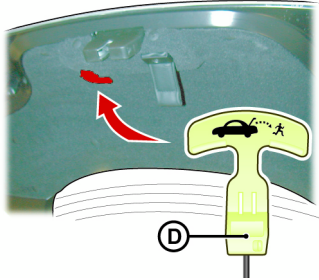
 To use a battery conditioner the trunk lid has to be left open (trunk lid down but not latched).

If the vehicle is locked while the trunk lid is open, the vehicle will lock and arm (deadlocking, tilt and interior movement sensors<sup>2</sup> will not operate). If the trunk lid is then closed (latched) deadlocking, tilt and interior movement sensors will operate and the whole vehicle will be locked and armed.

<sup>2</sup>. Option.

## Trunk Lid Emergency Open

The trunk lid can be opened from inside the trunk by pulling the luminous emergency release handle (D).



## Deadlocking

**!** *If passengers are to stay in the vehicle after locking, reduced guard must be ON before locking.*

The vehicle will automatically deadlock after 25 seconds after arming the security system. When the vehicle is deadlocked, the doors cannot be opened from the inside by pulling the interior door handle. To open the doors use the vehicle key.

## Automatic Lock

When automatic lock is set to ON the doors and the trunk lid will automatically lock as vehicle speed reaches 4.4 mph. This function prevents unwanted access to the vehicle when stopped at traffic lights, etc.

Press **MENU** (A). Navigate to <Car settings...> Enter <Lock settings...> Enter <Automatic settings...>. Select <Doors auto lock> or <Doors auto unlock on key out>. Press **ENTER** to toggle between ON and OFF.

Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.





## Approach Light

**<Doors auto lock>** - Set to ON: Doors and the trunk lid automatically lock when the vehicle moves off. Set to OFF: Doors and the trunk lid will not lock when the vehicle moves off.

**<Doors auto unlock on key out>** - Set to ON: The front doors and the trunk lid automatically unlock when the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control. Set to OFF: One pull of a door handle will centrally unlock all doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

 *Automatic lock is factory set to ON (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.15).*

 *In the event of a vehicle accident all doors will automatically unlock.*

When approaching the vehicle the side and interior lamps can be set to ON by pressing the  button on the vehicle key.

The time that the lamps stay ON is programmable (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.15).

## Homesafe

When exiting the vehicle and the vehicle key has been removed, flash the main beam (pull the left side stalk up and release without latching) to set homesafe ON. The main beam and rear lamps will then stay ON for a determined amount of time and then go OFF. The time that the main beam and rear lamps stay ON is programmable (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.15).

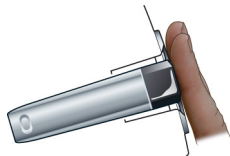
## Alarm

When the alarm has started a siren will be heard for a 25 seconds cycle (ten cycles maximum) and the direction indicators flash for five minutes after which the security system returns to the armed state. The doors and trunk lid will stay locked throughout.

 Markets where visible alarm signals and audible sirens are permitted.

Stop the alarm at any time by pressing the  button on the vehicle key or by inserting the vehicle key into the ignition control (position 'II'). There is approximately a ten second delay before the alarm is stopped).

 Insert the key to position 'II' by using the flat of a finger, as shown.



### Interior Movement Sensor

(Option)

When the vehicle is locked and armed the interior movement sensor will sense movement inside the vehicle. If movement is detected it will start the alarm.

### Tilt Sensor

(Option)

When the vehicle is locked and armed the tilt sensor will sense if the vehicle is tilted, for example, if the vehicle is being raised on a jack. If vehicle tilt is detected it will start the alarm.

## Reduced Guard

 **Warning:** If a passenger is to stay in the vehicle after it has been locked, reduced guard must be set to ON before locking. In an emergency this will let a passenger open a door from inside the vehicle.

When reduced guard is ON deadlocking, interior movement and tilt sensors<sup>1</sup> are set to OFF. This will let a passenger open a door from the inside by pulling the interior door handle and a passenger or animals to be left in the vehicle with the security system armed.

If a door is opened from the inside, while reduced guard is ON, the security system alarm will start.

Press the  button on the vehicle key to stop the alarm at any time.

---

<sup>1</sup>. Option

Reduced guard is set by using the car settings menu. Press **MENU** (A). Navigate to <Car settings...> Enter <Reduced guard...>. Select <Activate once> or <Ask on exit> and press **ENTER** to toggle between ON and OFF. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.



**<Ask on exit>** - Set to ON: Each time the vehicle key is moved from ignition position 'II' (ignition ON) to ignition position 'I' or '0' the message PRESS ENTER TO REDUCE GUARD. PRESS EXIT TO CANCEL will show in the message centre (right). The message will time out after one minute and reduced guard will not come ON. Set to OFF: No message will show and reduced guard will not come ON.

**<Activate once>** - Set to ON: Reduced guard will come ON for one time. Set to ON each time reduced guard is required. Set to OFF: Reduced guard will not come ON.

Reduced guard stays ON until the vehicle key is inserted in the ignition control and moved to position 'II' (ignition ON).

## Passive Anti-Theft System

The Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) is a fully automatic engine immobiliser.

 *If a vehicle key is lost, a duplicate key can be created and programmed from the spare key by your Aston Martin Dealer.*

### Starting the Engine

When the security system is disarmed and the vehicle key is in the ignition control, the PATS controller sends a signal to the vehicle key. The vehicle key must respond with a valid code before engine start will be enabled. If a valid code is received, the ignition system will operate normally. If the vehicle key code is not received, or is invalid, engine start stays disabled.

### PATS Status

The PATS system state is shown by the red symbol on the instrument cluster (A).



#### Ignition

ON  
OFF  
OFF and the vehicle key removed from the ignition control

#### Action (Valid code)

Symbol comes ON for three seconds.  
Symbol will flash.  
Symbol will flash for five minutes or one minute after the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key.

## Fault Mode

If the status symbol continues flashing when the ignition is set to ON, the vehicle will stay immobilised.

Should this situation arise try removing and then inserting the vehicle key back to position 'II' in the ignition control. If this is unsuccessful try the spare key. If successful, get a replacement for the faulty vehicle key. If problems continue with the vehicle key, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

## Garage Door Opener

(Option: Available with auto dimming mirror only.)

The garage door opener (Homelink® Universal Transceiver) operating buttons and transceiver are located in the interior rear view mirror.

The transceiver can be programmed to transmit the radio frequencies of up to three different transmitters used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lights, security systems, or other radio frequency operated devices.

 A full list of radio frequency operated devices can be either obtained via the HomeLink Hot-line or through the HomeLink compatibility list which is provided on the HomeLink website.

For information, or for assistance, contact your Aston Martin Dealer. Alternatively contact Homelink directly at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or call the HomeLink Hot-line:

Toll-free: 008000 0466 354 65

or

+49 6838 907-277 (In certain countries difficulties may be experienced trying to reach the toll-free number by some providers).

 **Warning: Do not use the transceiver with any garage door opening system that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by safety standards. A garage door opening system which cannot detect an object, signalling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current safety standards. Using a garage door opening system without these features increases risk of serious injury or death.**

 **Warning: When programming the transceiver to a garage door opening system, make sure that people, the vehicle and objects are out of the way to prevent potential harm or damage as the gate or garage door will operate during the programming.**

 Keep the original transmitter for future use or programming procedures if, for example, you purchase a new vehicle.

 This device may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. This interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter as well as the in-vehicle transceiver.

 The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

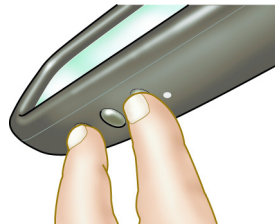
## Programming

 *Step 1 erases all programming. It only requires completing if programming Homelink for the first time or when erasing all existing programming. It does not have to be followed to program the other HomeLink buttons.*

 *The HomeLink buttons can be reprogrammed individually but not individually erased. Step 1 must be completed to erase all programming.*

1. Press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons, releasing only when the HomeLink LED begins to flash after 20 seconds. All three buttons are now cleared. The HomeLink system is now in setting mode.

As a security precaution make sure that all programming is erased in the HomeLink system before selling this vehicle.



2. Hold the original remote control of the device to be programmed at a distance of 4 - 12 in away from the HomeLink transmitter unit keeping the LED in view all the time. The distance between the remote control and the transmitter unit depends on the system being programmed. You may require several attempts at different distances. Maintain each setting position for at least 15 seconds before trying out another.
3. Using both hands, simultaneously push the remote control button and the desired button (1, 2 or 3).
4. The LED will flash, first slowly and then rapidly. When the LED flashes rapidly, release both buttons. The rapid flashing LED shows successful programming of the new frequency signal.



## Operation

The vehicle should be within the operating range of the gate or garage door opener and the ignition should be ON.

The HomeLink system operates the garage door opener (or other device) in exactly the same way as the original remote control.

When you have programmed the HomeLink system, press the appropriate button 1, 2, or 3 on the control panel to operate the garage door opener.

The LED will come ON when the button on the control panel is pressed.

 *For convenience, the original remote control of the device may also be used at any time.*

In the case of a standard code, the HomeLink LED is constantly ON throughout the transmission process. For use with compatible systems, no further action is necessary.



If HomeLink now does not operate the garage door opener (or other device), this may be because the original remote control has a rolling code feature (Refer to 'Rolling Code Synchronisation', page 2.14).

### Rolling Code Synchronisation

Check, by going through the following steps, whether or not the garage door opener (or other device) is equipped with a rolling code feature.

- Look in the garage door opener manual for clarification
- The remote control apparently programs HomeLink but HomeLink does not operate the garage door opener
- Press and hold down the programmed HomeLink button.  
With a rolling code system, the HomeLink LED flashes quickly for a short time and then stays ON constantly for two seconds. This pattern repeats itself for up to 20 seconds

If HomeLink was programmed with a rolling code system, then after the end of the programming period it must be synchronised with this system again before it will function correctly.

Follow the instructions below for Rolling Code Synchronisation (the procedure will take less time with a second person to help).

The vehicle must be within operating range of the garage door opener and the ignition set to ON. Make sure you comply with the safety instructions even when synchronizing the rolling code.

1. Locate the Training button (programming button) on the garage door opener motor head unit. Exact location and color of the button may vary by gate or garage door opener brand (refer to the operating instructions of the garage door opener 'Training additional remote controls').
2. Press the Training button (programming button) on the garage door opener motor head unit (which will usually set a 'training' LED to ON).  
Following step 2, there are typically 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3.
3. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button. Press and release the HomeLink button a second time to complete the training process. (Some garage door openers may require this procedure a third time to complete the training).

The garage door opener should now recognise the HomeLink signal and operate when the HomeLink button is pressed.

The next two buttons may now be programmed if this has not previously been done (Refer to 'Programming', page 2.13).

### Reprogramming

If a HomeLink button has been programmed to operate a device, and you now wish to use this button to operate a different device, proceed as follows. This procedure will erase the existing programming of the respective HomeLink button.

1. Press the appropriate HomeLink button 1, 2, or 3 which requires reprogramming and keep holding it for about 20 seconds until the LED starts flashing slowly. Do not release until step 4 has been completed.
2. When the LED begins to flash slowly (after approximately 20 seconds), hold the remote control of the device you wish to use approximately 4 - 12 in away from the HomeLink transmitter unit - keeping the LED in view.  
The distance between the remote control and the HomeLink transmitter unit depends on the system being learned. You may require several attempts at different distances. Maintain each setting position for at least 15 seconds before trying out another.
3. Now press the remote control and keep it pressed.

## Personalization

4. The HomeLink LED will flash, first slowly and then rapidly. When the LED begins to flash rapidly, release both buttons.

A number of security functions can be personalized. The functions are set by using the infotainment **DISPLAY**.

[1] **ON/OFF** - Infotainment centre ON and OFF

[2] **SCREEN** - Shows options, menus and information.

[3] **TUNING** - Turn (left or right) to navigate in the menus.

[4] **MENU** - Opens the main menu.

[5] **ENTER** - Select in the menu or open a selection.

[6] **JOYSTICK** - Navigate in the menus.

[7] **BACK** - Navigate back in the menu or cancel a selection.



## Selection

With the vehicle key in ignition position 'I' or 'II', press **MENU** and navigate to the required setting and press **ENTER**. Use the **JOYSTICK** to make a selection and press **ENTER** to accept.

## Menu

### 1) Car settings...

- 1) Reduced guard...
  - 1) Activate once
  - 2) Ask on exit
- 2) Mirror settings...
  - 1) Auto mirror fold flat enabled
  - 2) Reverse mirror dip settings...<sup>1</sup>
    - 1) Auto
    - 2) Passenger only
    - 3) Passenger and driver

### 3) Lock settings...

- 1) Automatic settings...
  - 1) Doors auto lock
  - 2) Doors auto unlock on key out
- 2) Doors unlock...
  - 1) All doors
  - 2) Driver door, then all
- 4) Light settings...
  - 1) Lock confirm. light
  - 2) Unlock confirm. light
  - 3) Approach light duration...
    - 1) 30, 60 or 90 seconds
  - 4) Homesafe light duration...
    - 1) 30, 60 or 90 seconds
- 5) Information...
  - 1) VIN number...



ASTON MARTIN

<sup>1</sup>. Option.



## Before Driving

|                            |      |                                    |      |
|----------------------------|------|------------------------------------|------|
| Checks Before Driving..... | 3.2  | Child Safety .....                 | 3.13 |
| Seat Adjustment.....       | 3.2  | Front Passenger Sensing .....      | 3.13 |
| Sport Seat .....           | 3.3  | Tether Anchors .....               | 3.16 |
| Seat Memory Function ..... | 3.4  | Automatic Locking Retractors ..... | 3.17 |
| Steering Wheel .....       | 3.5  | Child Seats.....                   | 3.18 |
| Interior Mirrors.....      | 3.5  | Cabin Storage .....                | 3.18 |
| Door Mirrors .....         | 3.6  | Trunk Cover.....                   | 3.20 |
| Restraints System.....     | 3.7  | Accessory Sockets .....            | 3.22 |
| Seat Belts .....           | 3.8  | Ashtray and Cigar Lighter .....    | 3.22 |
| Airbags.....               | 3.11 | Electric Windows .....             | 3.23 |
|                            |      | Reading Lamps .....                | 3.24 |

## Checks Before Driving

Inspect your vehicle to make sure that everything is according to the information and specifications in this Owner's Guide.

### Outside the vehicle:

- Visually check the road wheels, nuts and tires
- Check that all windows, mirrors and lamps are clear and unobstructed
- Check that the trunk lid, hood and fuel filler flap are securely closed
- Check the operation of all lamps

### Once Inside the vehicle:

- Check that the doors are securely closed
- Check that the seat, mirrors and steering wheel adjustments are correct
- Check that all gauges and symbols are reading correctly
- Check that all passengers have fastened their seat belts

## Seat Adjustment

**⚠ Warning: Do not attempt to adjust the drivers seat whilst driving.**

**! The vehicle key must only be inserted into the ignition control with the two indents first, as shown. To insert the larger end first the key may damage the ignition control.**



The seats can be adjusted while the vehicle key is in the ignition control. Gently insert the vehicle key up to position '1' (press down until the instrument cluster and infotainment centre lights come ON) and release.

They can also be adjusted:

- Up to six minutes after a door is unlocked and before the vehicle key is inserted into the ignition control
- Up to six minutes after the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control

If the seat operation times out:

- Place the vehicle key in the ignition control
- Close or open a door

The seat adjustment controls are located each side of the centre console (A).



## Sport Seat

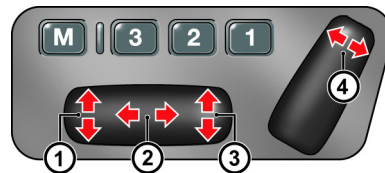
### Seat Head Restraints

The driver and front passenger seats include non-adjustable head restraints (A), which limit the rearward travel of the head in a rear impact and may reduce whip lash injuries. When sitting in the seats make sure that the seat back is in an upright position and that the rear of the head is positioned in the centre of the head restraint area. The head restraints are most effective when the distance between the rear of the head and the head restraint is kept to a minimum.



### Seat Adjustment

 *Memory Seats: When making seat adjustments, i.e. moving the seat base rearwards, raising or lowering the seat base, the seat back will motor forwards whenever it approaches trim panels located behind it. If the seat back is tilted backwards the seat base will move forwards if the seat back approaches trim panels.*



- [1] - Raise or lower the **front** of the seat.
- [2] - Move the seat **forwards** or **rearwards**.
- [3] - Raise or lower the **rear** of the seat.
- [4] - Raise or lower the **front** of the seat.
- [5] - Press forwards or rearwards to increase or reduce the **lower lumbar support**.
- [6] - Press forwards or rearwards to increase or reduce the **upper lumbar support**.
- [7] - Press to the rear for the **lower** heat setting, press to the front for the **higher** heat setting. A LED shows which heat level is ON. Press to the centre position for OFF (LEDs OFF)<sub>1</sub>.

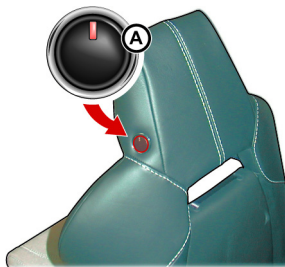
<sub>1</sub>. Option.

 *The ignition must be ON before the heated seat and lumbar support can be operated.*

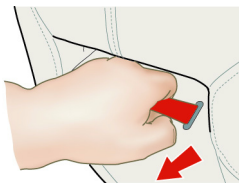


## Seat Back Release

Press and hold in button A to release the seat back, once the seat has been moved forward release the button and manually move the seat back forwards.



 In the unlikely event of power failure a manual release strap is provided in the seat back. Pull and hold the strap to release the seat back and then move the seat back forward.



## Seat Memory Function

Option.

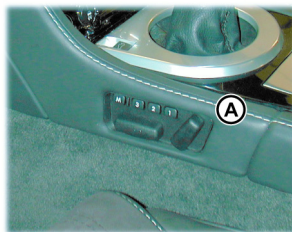
 **Warning:** Make sure that there is nothing in front of, behind, or under the seat during adjustment.

 **Warning:** To avoid injury, make sure that children do not play with the switches

 **Warning:** If the seat accidentally begins to move, press any seat control button to stop the seat.

The position of the driver and front passenger seats can be memorised and recalled. Three different driving position profiles can be entered in the memory. The memory position of the driver's seat also includes both door rear view mirrors.

The memory function buttons are located in the seat adjustment controls which are located each side of the centre console (A).



## Setting a Preset Position

 **Warning:** Do not attempt to adjust the seat whilst driving.

Adjust the seat and the door rear view mirrors to the desired position.

- Seat adjustment (Refer to 'Seat Adjustment', page 3.2).
- Mirror adjustment (Refer to 'Door Mirrors', page 3.6).

Push both the memory button (M) and the desired setting button (1, 2 or 3) simultaneously and release. A chime is heard and message will show in the message centre (right) to confirm<sup>1</sup>. By repeating these steps and pressing an unused button, a second and third driving position can be stored in the memory.



 When making adjustments to a set driving position, reset the new position in the same memory channel. The previous memory is erased when a new driving position is entered.

<sup>1</sup>. Driver's seat only.

### Recalling a Memorised Position

Once in the seat press and hold button 1, 2 or 3 (depending on which position required) until all movement is stopped.

The seat and door mirrors (when adjusting the driver's seat) move to the programmed position. If the button is released all movement will stop, press and hold again to continue movement.

### Memory Using the Vehicle Key

When the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key, the driver's seat and both door rear view mirrors will remember their positions. The next time the vehicle is opened using the same vehicle key, the seat and door rear view mirrors will move to the memorised position once the door handle is used.

 *The seats and door rear view mirrors only move if they have been moved previously, i.e. the spare vehicle key has been used and the seats or mirrors have been moved.*

### Emergency Stop

If the seat accidentally begins to move, press any seat control button to stop the seat.

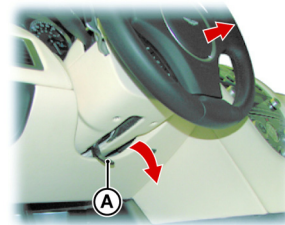
## Steering Wheel

 **Warning:** Do not adjust steering wheel whilst driving.

 **Warning:** Make sure that the steering column is fully locked in position. The reach and tilt release lever must be fully up, in line with the steering column.

### Reach and Tilt

The reach and tilt angle of the steering wheel are adjusted by using the release lever (A). Pull the release lever downwards and manoeuvre the steering wheel to the required position. Hold the steering wheel in the required position and lock it by pulling the release lever up.



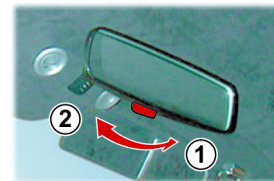
## Interior Mirrors

### Manual Dip Rear View Mirror

Use to avoid dazzle from headlamps of following vehicles. Adjust on its ball mounting until a satisfactory rear view is obtained.

[1] - Normal position.

[2] - Dipped position.

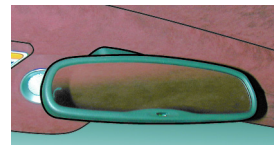


### Automatic Dimm Rear View Mirror

(Option)

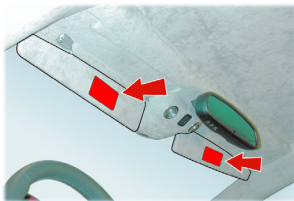
Adjust on its ball mounting until a satisfactory rear view is obtained.

The rear view mirror will dim automatically if the glare from the headlamps of following vehicles becomes too bright. The mirror will return to normal view as unwanted glare reduces to an acceptable level. If the mirror is dimmed when reverse gear is selected the mirror will revert to normal view.



## Vanity Mirror

A vanity mirror is located in each sun visor.

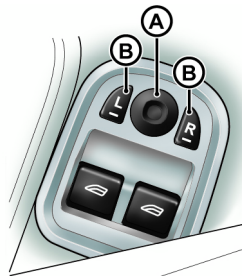


## Door Mirrors

To adjust the door mirrors select the left or right mirror (B). Then move the joystick (A) up, down, left or right to adjust the selected mirror.

The vehicle key must at position 'I' or 'II' in the ignition control before the door mirrors can be adjusted.

An amber LED shows the selected mirror.



## Heated Mirrors

When the heated rear window is ON the heaters in the door mirrors will operate for 6.5 minutes.

## Power Fold Function

The power fold mirror function moves the door mirror assemblies until folded flat against the doors (folded).

Insert the vehicle key to position 'I' or 'II' in the ignition control. Move the mirrors to the folded position by pressing down and releasing both the left and right mirror select switches (B) together. The mirrors will motor to the folded position. Repeat to motor the mirrors back to the driving position.

## Auto Fold function

When the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key the mirrors will automatically fold in flat against the doors. They return to the driving position once the vehicle is unlocked.

Press **MENU** (C) and navigate to <Car settings...> Enter <Mirror settings...> Enter <Auto mirror fold flat enabled>. Press **ENTER** to toggle between ON and OFF. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.



If the mirrors have been folded using the power fold function then the mirrors will stay folded until placed in the driving position using the power fold function again.



*Door mirror vibration can occur if the mirrors have been moved manually (folded or unfolded), either intentionally or accidentally. To reset the linkage operate the power fold function once to fold or unfold the mirrors.*

## Reverse Dip Function

(Option)

This function gives a better view to the rear of the vehicle while reversing.

When reverse gear is selected:

**Automatic Mode** - When reverse gear is selected the door mirrors automatically move to the first preset dip position. If the mirror requires further lowering, press down and release the joystick again. If the mirror is lowered too far, press the mirror joystick up and release.

**Manual Mode** - Press down and release the mirror joystick (A). This will lower the door mirrors to preset position 1 dip. If the mirror requires further lowering, press down and release the joystick again. If the mirror is lowered too far, press the mirror joystick up and release.

In manual or automatic mode the mirrors return to driving view when reverse gear is de-selected or when either mirror button (B) is pressed.

## Reverse Dip Settings

Press **MENU** (C) and navigate to <Car settings...> Enter <Mirror settings...> Enter <Reverse mirror dip settings...>. Select <Auto (reverse gear selected)>, <Passenger only> or <Passenger and driver>.

Press **ENTER** to toggle between ON and OFF. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.

**<Auto>** - If set to ON: The door mirrors dip automatically when reverse gear is selected. If set to OFF: The door mirrors stay in manual mode.

**<Passenger only>** - Only the passenger door mirror dips.

**<Passenger and driver>** - Passenger and driver door mirrors dip.

## Restraints System

The restraints system gives protection to the driver and passenger in a variety of impact conditions. The system consists of:

- Driver and passenger safety belts with pre-tensioners and load limiting systems
- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbags
- Driver and passenger seat side airbags
- Front Passenger Sensing

All of these systems are controlled by a Restraints Control Module (RCM). In a collision the RCM will analyze information from various sensors, including crash and seat occupancy conditions. Based on this information the RCM will deploy the appropriate safety devices. During a crash, the RCM may or may not operate the safety belt pre-tensioners and none, one, or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.

If the pre-tensioners or airbags do not operate in a collision it does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the system determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to operate these safety devices.

Front airbags are designed to operate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollovers, side-impacts, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

## Determining if the System is Operational

A warning symbol in the instrument cluster  shows the condition of the system. A difficulty with the system is shown by one or more of the following:

- The warning symbol will flash or stay ON
- The warning symbol does not come ON immediately after the ignition is set to ON

If either of these conditions occur, even intermittently, have the restraint system serviced at your Aston Martin Dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not operate correctly in the event of a collision.

## Seat Belts

Aston Martin strongly recommend the use of seat belts.

**⚠ Warning: Seat belts should not be worn with straps twisted.**

**⚠ Warning: Each belt assembly must only be used by one passenger; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the passengers lap. Do not put an adult seat belt around two children.**

**⚠ Warning: When installed, the seat belt webbing must not contact any sharp edges which could abrade or cut the webbing during normal use or in an accident. If necessary, the webbing must be protected.**

**⚠ Warning: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.**

**⚠ Warning: Wearing your seat belt is crucial to your safety. Not wearing a seat belt increases chance of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.**

**⚠ Warning: Be sure that you and your passenger always fasten their seat belts and use them correctly even though airbags are provided.**

**⚠ Warning: Reclining the seat back decreases protection provided by the seat belt in the event of a crash. Adjust the seat back to an upright position. Make sure that the seat back is locked in place. Otherwise it could move forward in the event of a sudden stop or crash and cause injury.**

**⚠ Warning: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.**

**⚠ Warning: Never place shoulder portion of belt under your arm or behind your back.**

**⚠ Warning: Always remove from your pockets rigid or breakable objects, i.e. spectacles or a mobile phone, which could be trapped under seat belts, possibly causing injury in the event of an accident.**



 **Warning:** Expectant mothers should seek medical advice on the most appropriate way to wear the seat belt.

 **Warning:** Seat belts must be kept clean so that the retractor works correctly. Make sure that belt webbing is not twisted, looped, frayed or obstructed in any way. If in doubt about condition or operation of seat belt installation, have it checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.

 **Warning:** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent seat belt adjusting devices from operating, or prevent seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack. Never install accessories on your seat belts.

 **Warning:** Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

 **Warning:** It is essential to replace the entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the seat belt assembly is not obvious.

## Pre-tensioner and Load Limiting

All seat belts are equipped with pre-tensioner and load limiting systems.

In most moderate frontal or near frontal accidents, the front airbag and all pre-tensioner systems will deploy simultaneously.

The pre-tensioners take up slack in the seat belts as the airbags are expanding. The load limiting system releases belt webbing in a controlled manner to reduce belt force on the passenger's chest.

 In some moderate frontal or near frontal accidents, only the pre-tensioner system will deploy.

## Seat Belt Reminder

 A warning symbol in the instrument cluster will come ON and warning sound will be heard for six seconds (approximately) when the ignition is set to ON if the driver or passenger<sub>1</sub> seat belt is not fastened<sub>2</sub>.

An audible warning will sound. Stop the vehicle and fasten the seat belt.

The warning messages are always available, press the **READ** button to view stored messages.

## Seat Belt Fastening

 When parked on an incline, the seat belt may lock as it is withdrawn. This is not a fault. If the mechanism locks, release the belt tension and then pull the belt very gently to avoid operation of the inertia lock.

- 
1. If a passenger is sitting in the passenger seat.
  2. Market area dependant

Each seat has three point, inertia reel seat belts installed. Items 1, 2 and 3 show the three points of the seat belt. Item 3 is also the location of the belt buckle.

The inertia belt reels will automatically tension the belts to provide security with comfort. In the event of a collision or during severe braking, the belt reels will lock.

Pull out the seat belt, drawing the tongue over the shoulder and across the chest.

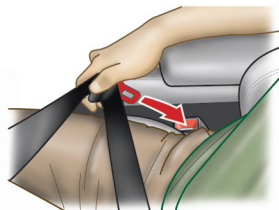


Push the tongue into the belt buckle latch until a positive click is heard.

Pull upwards on the diagonal belt to make sure that the latching is secure and to remove all slack from the belt.

Finally, double check that the lap belt is installed snugly, low down across the hips, and that there are no twists.

If it is necessary for a passenger to adjust their seat or seating position during a journey, the belt tension might be disturbed.



The passenger should therefore (as soon as it is safe to do so) gently pull down the shoulder run of the seat belt to create some slack and then immediately release it to re-tension the belt for the new seating position.



## Seat Belt Unfastening

Depress the button on the buckle. While holding the seat belt tongue allow the belt to slowly retract to its stored position.

## Child Seat Belt Fastening

**⚠ Warning:** *An infant or child that is not correctly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash. Seat belts are designed for adults and larger children; infants and smaller children must be restrained in an approved child safety seat.*

Make sure that there is no slack in the webbing and that the restraint installs correctly across the child's rib cage and hips. These are the parts of the body most able to take the force of impact.

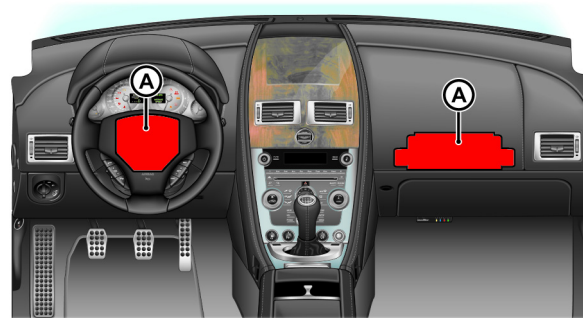
The lap strap should pass across the top of the child's thighs, bearing on the pelvis, not on the abdominal area.



# Airbags

## Supplemental Restraints System

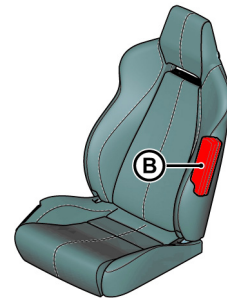
The vehicle is equipped with driver and passenger airbags. The airbags and seat belt pre-tensioners are electrically controlled by the restraints system.



The front airbags (A) only deploy in a serious front collision. The side airbags, located in the front seats (B) only deploy according to which side has been impacted in a serious side collision.

The purpose of the airbags is to provide **additional** protection for the driver and passengers in the event of a serious impact (front or side impacts). The airbags are supplementary to the seat belts.

Important airbag safety labels are located on the sun visors and on the end of the instrument panel (passenger side). Make sure that the instructions on these labels are read and complied with before driving the vehicle.



## Airbag Deployment

**⚠ Warning:** *The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident. Do not use accessory seat covers.*

**⚠ Warning:** *All passengers, including the driver, should always wear seat belts, whether or not an airbag is provided, to decrease the risk of injury or death in the event of a crash.*

**⚠ Warning:** *No objects whatsoever should be attached to the centre cover of the steering wheel or the front passenger fascia panel. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the airbags to deploy.*

Airbags inflate rapidly and with considerable force; there is therefore a risk of death or serious injury such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to passengers who are not correctly restrained by seat belts or are not sitting correctly when the airbags deploy. The risk of injury from a deploying airbag is greatest close to the trim panel covering the airbag.

The whole sequence of events from sensing the impact to full inflation of the airbag takes place in a fraction of a second. The noise and gas associated with the deployment of the airbags is not injurious to health.

Do not change, modify or tamper with the steering wheel, passenger side fascia or any other part of the airbag system. Such actions could disable the system or cause inadvertent airbag deployment.

The system will not deploy in the event of minor frontal or side impacts, such as contacts when parking.

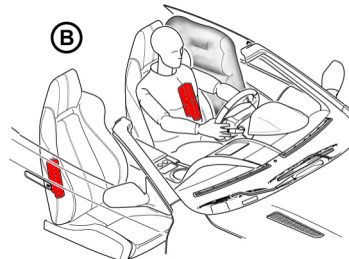
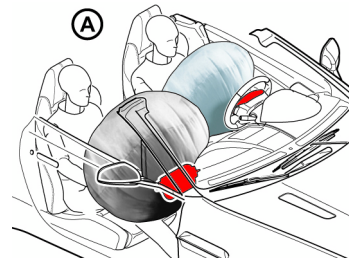
The airbag system is not designed to protect against rear impacts.

All work on the airbag system must only be carried out by an Aston Martin Dealer.

 *If you are considering modifying this vehicle in any way to accommodate a disability, for example by altering or adapting the driver's or passenger's seat or airbag systems, please contact Aston Martin: Customer Service Manager, Aston Martin North America, One Premier Place, Irvine, CA 92618.*

**[A]** - Front Airbag Deployment

**[B]** - Front Seat Airbag Deployment



## Child Safety

Aston Martin strongly recommends:

- **Not to install any child seat on the passenger seat of this vehicle.**

A child, regardless of age, should always be restrained when travelling in a vehicle.

**⚠ Warning: Do not allow children to travel in a vehicle without restraint. An appropriate child seat or harness should always be used.**

**⚠ Warning: Each seat belt assembly must be used by only one passenger. It is dangerous to put a seat belt around a child being carried on the passengers lap.**

**⚠ Warning: Make sure that an installed child seat does not rest against the door, that the child sits correctly in the seat and does not lean close to, or against, the door or window.**

Your vehicle has the following devices for the installation of child restraints:

- Front Passenger Sensing system
- Passenger seats Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) seat belts
- Tether anchor points<sup>1</sup>

## Child Seats and Front Passenger Airbag

**⚠ Warning: Do not use a child restraint on a seat protected by a front airbag which is set to ON.**

**⚠ Warning: Extreme Hazard: Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it.**

**⚠ Warning: Never place a child in a child seat or on a booster cushion on the front passenger seat if the airbag is set to ON.**

In the event of a serious frontal or side collision the vehicle airbag system is designed to deploy, to provide additional protection for the front seat occupants.

If a forward facing child seat is to be used in the front passenger seat, follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to secure the child seat and move the passenger seat to its rearmost and lowest position.

---

<sup>1</sup>. Sport seat only: No height adjust.

## Front Passenger Sensing

The front passenger sensing system is part of an advanced restraints system and gives the following, in addition to the restraints system.

Front passenger sensing is designed to meet the regulatory requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS)208 and is designed to set the front passenger's front airbag to OFF under certain conditions.

The system works with sensors which are installed in the front passenger's seat. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a correctly seated passenger and determine if the front passenger's front airbag should be set to ON or OFF.

 *If it is necessary to modify the advanced restraints system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your Aston Martin Dealer at the phone number shown in the dealer directory of this owner's guide.*

Front passenger sensing will set the front passenger's front airbag to OFF if:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied
- A child is present or a child is present in a child seat which is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions
- A front passenger takes their weight off of the seat for a period of time

If the front passenger seat is occupied and the sensing system has set the passenger's front airbag to OFF, the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol (A) will come ON and stay ON to show that the front passenger front airbag is OFF.

Front passenger sensing will set the front passenger's front airbag to ON anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting correctly in the front passenger seat.



| Passenger Seat     | Airbag | PASS AIRBAG OFF Lamp |
|--------------------|--------|----------------------|
| Empty              | OFF    | OFF                  |
| Child + child seat | OFF    | ON                   |
| Adult              | ON     | OFF                  |

In some cases a small child placed in a child seat will not set the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol to ON. If this occurs the passenger airbag status will be as described above for an empty seat, i.e. passenger seat airbag 'OFF' and the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol OFF.

The passenger sensing system may detect small or medium objects placed on the seat base. For most objects which are on the passenger seat, the passenger front airbag will be set to OFF. Even though the passenger airbag is set to OFF, the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol may or may not come ON according to the table above.

The PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol will come ON for a short period when the ignition is switched ON to confirm it is ready.

Seating Position

**Always sit upright against the seat back, with your feet on the floor. If you do not sit correctly or with the seat back reclined too far this can take off weight from the seat base and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Incorrect installation of a child seat may cause the passenger sensing system to leave the front airbag set to ON. Always make sure that child seats are correctly installed on the seat. Read the child seat manufacture's installation instructions.**

**Warning: Even with the advanced restraints system, children aged 12 and under should be correctly restrained in the rear seats.**

**Warning: Do not stow objects in seat back pocket, the seat base front pocket or hang objects off seat back if a child is in the front passenger seat.**

**Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the centre console.**

**Check the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol for correct airbag status.**

**Failure to follow these instructions can interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system.**

**Warning: Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system.**

After all passengers have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it's very important that they continue to sit correctly. A correctly seated passenger sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centred on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting incorrectly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if a passenger slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or side ways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat and the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol is ON, it is possible that the person is not sitting correctly in the seat.

If this happens:

1. Set the ignition to OFF. Ask the person to place the seat back in the full upright position.
2. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centred on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
3. Start the engine and have the person stay in this position for about two minutes. This will let the system detect that person and set the passenger's front airbag to ON.
4. If the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol stays ON even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

If you think that the status of the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects
  - Lodged underneath the seat
  - Between the seat cushion and the centre console
  - Hanging off the seat back
  - Stowed in the seat back document pocket
  - Placed on the passenger's lap
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat

These conditions can cause the weight of a correctly seated passenger to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat can appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described.

If the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol is ON, do the following:

The driver and adult passengers should check for any objects that may be lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.

If objects are lodged or cargo is interfering with the seat take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

1. Set the ignition to OFF.
2. Check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
3. Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
4. Start the engine.
5. Wait at least two minutes and verify that the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol is no longer ON.

If the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol stays ON, this may or may not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take the vehicle immediately to the nearest Aston Martin Dealer.

## Determining if the System is Operational

The warning symbol in the instrument cluster shows the status of the system. A problem with the system is shown by one or more of the following:

- The warning symbol will either flash or stay ON
- The warning symbol will not come ON immediately after the ignition is set to ON

If either of these conditions occur, even intermittently, have the restraint system serviced at your Aston Martin Dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not operate correctly in a collision.

## Tether Anchors

No Height Adjust Passenger Seat

**⚠ Warning: An infant or child that is not properly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash. Seat belts are designed for adults and larger children; infants and smaller children must be restrained in an approved child safety seat.**

**⚠ Warning: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**

**⚠ Warning: Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Not following the child-seat manufacturer's instructions when installing the child seat is dangerous.**

**⚠ Warning: Make sure the child seat tether strap is free from obstructions above and below. Do not place any items on the tether strap between the child seat and the tether anchor point. Do not place tether strap over any items between the child seat and the tether anchor point.**

A tether is a strap that connects the top of a child seat to a tether anchor point on the vehicle to reduce excessive movement of the child seat in the event of a collision. The purpose of a tether strap is to provide additional protection for the child seat occupant in the event of a serious impact. The tether strap is supplementary to the seat belts. Your vehicle has a tether anchor point for each rear passenger seat.

The tether anchor point is located at the base, rear of the passenger seat (A).

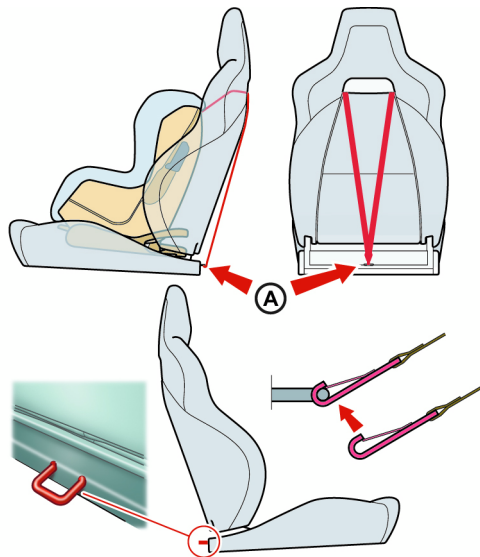
 Motor the seat forward to access the tether anchor point.

Route the tether strap through the seat back as shown. Engage the tether clip to the anchor point as shown and make sure that the locking spring has fully closed to prevent accidental disengagement.

Always make sure that the tether strap length is adjusted to remove any slack.



## Automatic Locking Retractors



**⚠ Warning:** Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Not following the child-seat manufacturer's instructions when installing the child seat is dangerous.

Aston Martin does not recommend any specific child seat for this vehicle **which require the use of the vehicle seat belt for installation.**

The Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) system is designed to securely hold child seats. The ALR system temporarily locks the seat belt that is securing a child seat.

### ALR Operation

Gently pull out the seat belt until fully extended. The ALR system will only engage at the maximum extension point of the seat belt.

Thread the belt tongue through the child seat as instructed by the child seat manufacturer. Engage the tongue into the belt buckle.

Adjust the tongue position on the belt, if necessary, to make sure that the lower belt run is tight and then allow the upper run of the seat belt to fully retract until the child seat is securely held. The ALR system will be heard 'clicking' as the seat belt retracts.

When fully retracted, pull down on the upper run of the belt to check that the ALR lock has engaged.

**📖** When parked on an incline, the seat belt may lock as it is withdrawn. This is not a fault. If the mechanism locks, release the seat belt tension and then pull the seat belt very gently to avoid operation of the inertia lock.

The ALR system will disengage when the seat belt is fully retracted. The seat belt may then be worn when required as a normal seat belt. Once the ALR is disengaged, the seat belt must be fully extended to re-engage the system on the next occasion that a child seat is installed.

## Child Seats

**⚠ Warning:** Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Not following the child seat manufacturer's instructions when installing the child seat is dangerous.

**⚠ Warning:** Do not seat a child aged 12 or younger, or weighing 80 lb or less in the car without an appropriate child seat or booster cushion.

### Use of Child Seats

Child safety seats must be in conformity with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213. Look for the statement on the box and seat.

Look for the following when selecting a child seat:

- It should have a label certifying that it meets the applicable Safety Standards
- Carefully read the instructions supplied with the child seat. Make sure you understand them and can install and use the device correctly and safely in the vehicle
- Make sure that the child seat is appropriate for the child's weight and development. The label required by the standard or regulations, or instructions for infant seats, usually provide this information

An infant or child that is not correctly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash. Seat belts are designed for adults and larger children; infants and smaller children must be restrained in an approved child seat.

Children could be endangered in a crash if their child seat is not correctly secured in the vehicle.

Never hold a baby or child on your lap while riding in the vehicle.

Consult with local manufacturers of forward facing restraint and booster cushions. These manufacturers can supply you with advice on the safety of their particular child restraints.

Check the seat manufacturers instructions for correct use and installation – use the correct size seat and correctly secure the seat in the vehicle in accordance with the manufacturers instructions. Be sure to read and follow the 'Installation and Use Instructions' provided with the child seat.

## Cabin Storage

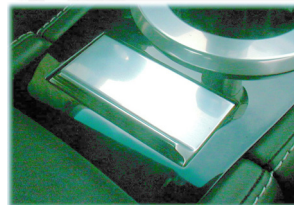
### Glove Box

Press the glove box button (A) to open. Push up to close.



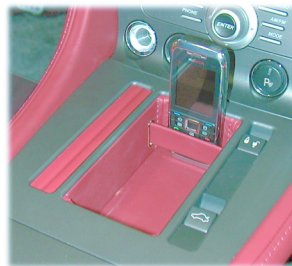
### Trinket Box

Lift the lid to open (Non smoking option).



### Trinket Tray

Trinket tray, including mobile phone pocket, coin or credit card holder (SportShift transmission only).



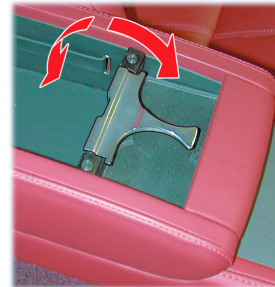
### Cup Holders

**⚠ Warning: Only use the cup holder when safe to do so.**

**⚠ Warning: Do not place hot drinks in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. There is a risk of scalding.**

**⚠ Warning: Use soft cups only. Hard cups or objects can cause personal injury in a collision.**

Cup holders are located the front centre console.



### Front Cubby Box

The armrest cubby box has an iPod, USB ports, an auxiliary socket and an accessory socket.



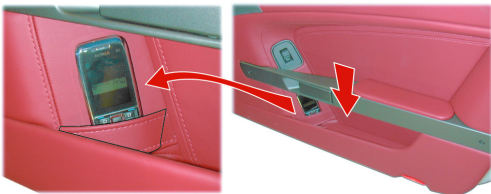
### Rear Cubby Box

Including accessory socket (Roadster only).



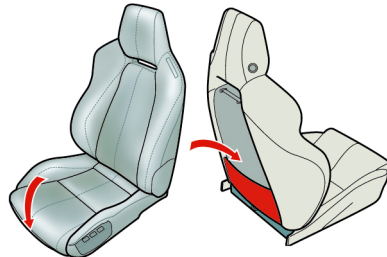
## Door Pockets

Both doors have pockets, including a phone holder.



## Front Seat Pockets

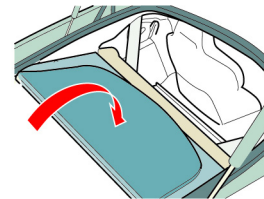
Do not place items in these pockets if a child restraint system is being used.



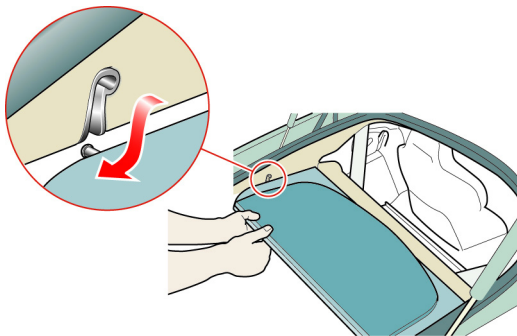
## Trunk Cover

### To Remove

Detach the two trunk lid cords and fold the rear section forward.

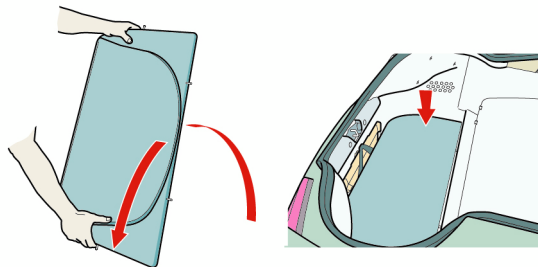


Slightly raise the trunk cover up and then back. Lower and remove the cover to the rear.



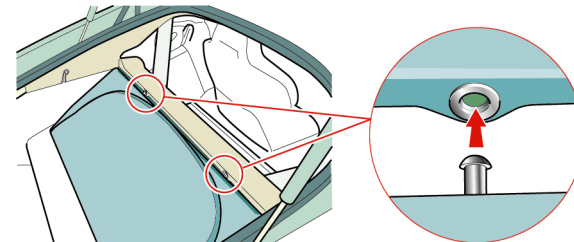
### Storage

Keep the rear section folded and turn the trunk cover 180°. Place the cover in the rear section of the trunk.



### To Install

Insert the trunk cover, from below, and locate the two rear pins. Raise the cover. Locate the two side pins up into the area provided in the trim panel. Slightly push forward and allow to drop into position. Install the two trunk lid cords.



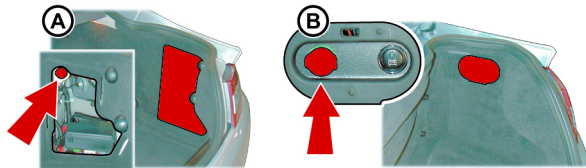
## Accessory Sockets

**⚠ Warning:** *Damage to electrical circuits will result if more than 10 amps is drawn from the accessory socket. Only connect accessories which are designed for use in a motor vehicle.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Prolonged use of an accessory socket when vehicle engine is set to OFF may seriously discharge battery.*

Accessory sockets are mounted in the front armrest cubby box and the trunk right side wall (A and B) and may be used to power any 12 volt vehicle accessory requiring a current of less than 10 amps.

📖 Vehicles installed with the non-smoking kit a third accessory socket is provided in the trinket box.



[a] - Coupe

[B] - Roadster

Roadster Only: An accessory socket is mounted in the rear cubby box.

Read the manufacturer's instructions and make sure that you do not connect any device which would exceed current rating of the accessory socket.

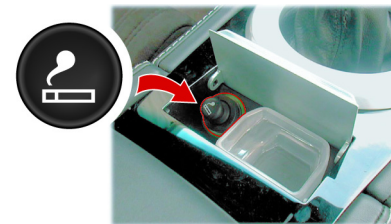
**⚠ Foreign items can get into the socket and cause damage - always place the cover on the accessory socket when not in use.**

## Ashtray and Cigar Lighter

(Option)

**⚠ Warning:** *The cigar lighter is heated to 'red heat' when in use. Take care to avoid burns. Do not allow children to play with the cigar lighter.*

The cigar lighter may be used when the vehicle key is in ignition position 'I' or 'II'.

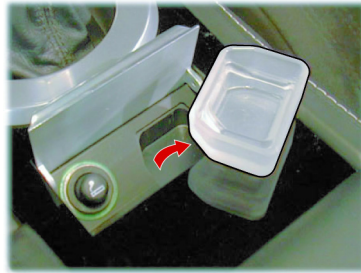


Push down until it clicks. The lighter will pop up when ready for use.

**⚠ Foreign items can get into the socket and cause damage - always place the lighter back into the accessory socket when not in use.**

## Electric Windows

Remove the ashtray by opening the lid and pulling the glass tray upwards. Install the tray by placing it into position and push down.



**⚠ Warning: Misuse of the window switches, especially by children, can result in injury due to entrapment in the window closure. Drivers must advise all passengers of the possible danger and make sure that all obstructions are clear before raising the window.**

 The windows can be operated up to one minute after the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control.

Each vehicle door has its own window switch and the drivers door window switch can operate both windows.

To raise and lower the windows the vehicle key must be at ignition position 'I' or 'II'.

Lightly press and hold a window switch (A) to lower the window in one movement. Lightly press and release the window switch to lower the window in stages. Firmly press and release to lower the window with one touch.

Lightly pull back and hold to raise the window in one movement. Lightly pull back and release, to raise the window in stages. Firmly pull back and release to raise the window in one movement.

If power to the electric windows has been interrupted for any reason, they will fail to operate correctly until reset (Refer to 'Door Window Reset', page 11.38).



## Reading Lamps

Reading lamps are located in the front environment. To operate the lamps (ON or OFF) press the individual switches mounted on the front centre console (A).

Unless set to OFF or ON they will continue to operate up to six minutes after the ignition is set to OFF.



## Door Sealing

**⚠ Warning: Make sure that all passengers are clear when the window mechanism is operating.**

To minimise wind noise and to make sure that the window seal is watertight a door sealing system is used to provide a tight fit of the door glass to the seals around the top of the door opening.

When a door is opened, the window automatically lowers a small distance to clear the door seal. As the door is closed, the window automatically, after a pause, lifts against the body frame rubber seals.



ASTON MARTIN





ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

A light blue, semi-transparent background image showing various car controls. Visible elements include a steering wheel with a 'MENU' button, a gear shift knob with an 'ENTER' button, and a handbrake. The image is out of focus and serves as a decorative backdrop for the table of contents.

# Controls

|                                       |      |
|---------------------------------------|------|
| Controls Overview .....               | 4.2  |
| Instrument Cluster.....               | 4.3  |
| Information and Warning Symbols ..... | 4.4  |
| Centre Stack .....                    | 4.7  |
| Ignition Control.....                 | 4.9  |
| Stalk Controls.....                   | 4.10 |
| Master Lamp Switch.....               | 4.11 |
| Vehicle Horn .....                    | 4.12 |
| Trip Computer .....                   | 4.13 |
| Cruise Control.....                   | 4.14 |
| Ambient Temperature .....             | 4.15 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring .....        | 4.16 |



**[1] FUEL FLAP RELEASE** - Press to open the fuel flap. Close the fuel flap by pressing down on the flap until the lock engages.

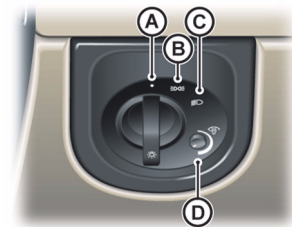
**Filler Flap Emergency Release:** (Refer to 'Fuel Flap Release', page 2.6).

**[2] MASTER LAMP SWITCH** - Three position master lamp switch, which controls the vehicle external lamps (OFF, side lamps and main lamps) (Refer to 'Master Lamp Switch', page 4.11).

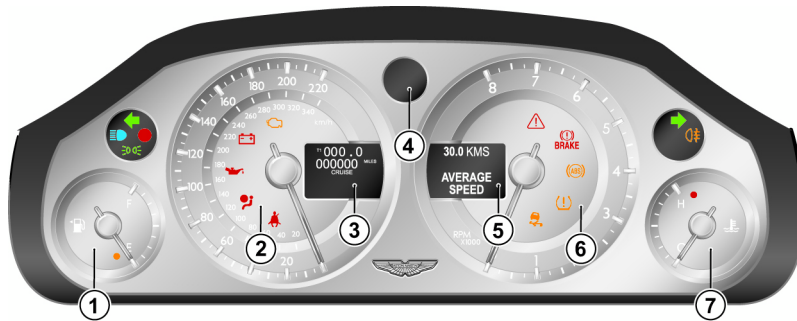
**[3] INSTRUMENT CLUSTER** - (Refer to 'Instrument Cluster', page 4.3)

**[4] CENTRE STACK** - (Refer to 'Centre Stack', page 4.7).

**[5] GLOVE BOX RELEASE** - Press to open the Glove box. Push the Glove box lid up to close.



## Instrument Cluster



**[1] FUEL GAUGE** - Shows how much fuel is in the fuel tank. Refuel as soon as possible when the low fuel symbol comes ON.

**[2] SPEEDOMETER** - Shows vehicle road speed.

**[3] MESSAGE CENTRE (LEFT)** - Shows the following:

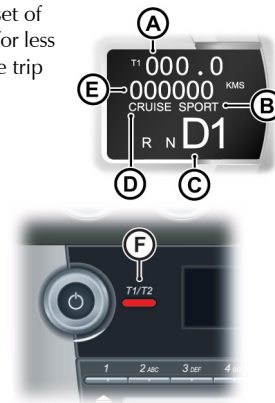
**[a] TRIP METER** - The trip meter shows distances travelled since last reset of trip meters T1 and T2. Toggle between T1 and T2 by pressing **T1/T2** (F) for less than three seconds. Press **T1/T2** for more than three seconds to reset the trip meter on show.

**[B] SPORT MODE STATUS** - Shows SPORT when sport mode is ON<sub>1</sub>.

**[C] GEAR RANGE** - Shows the transmission position and current gear selection. Possible transmission positions and gear selection are in bold<sub>1</sub>.

**[D] CRUISE STATUS** - Shows CRUISE when cruise control is ON (Refer to 'Cruise Control', page 4.14).

**[E] ODOMETER** - Shows the total distance covered by the vehicle.



<sub>1</sub>. SportShift Transmission Only.

#### [4] GEAR POSITION INDICATOR -



- **SportShift Transmission: Gear Position Indication Display (GPID)** Shows the current gear when in paddle shift mode. Shows 'D' when in auto drive mode (Refer to 'SportShift Transmission', page 5.4). A red 'R' will show when the transmission is in reverse.
- **Manual Transmission: Gear Shift Indication Display (GSID)** Shows maximum revs. in the current gear. A red 'R' will show when the transmission is in reverse (Refer to 'Manual Transmission', page 5.10).

#### [5] MESSAGE CENTRE (RIGHT) - Shows the following:

- **Driver Information and Warnings**  
Messages show if an unsatisfactory condition is detected. Message priority is shown by a red or amber triangle above the message display.  
**Red:** Potential personal danger or danger of damage to the vehicle.  
**Amber:** Advisory, shows possible degraded vehicle performance.

Warning messages will show when the ignition is ON and will cycle automatically.

View and acknowledge messages at any time by pressing the **READ** button (G).

- **Service Intervals**

TIME FOR REGULAR SERVICE will be shown when a regular vehicle service is due. This message will show at ignition ON (for two minutes) until the regular service has taken place.

- **Trip computer**

The message centre (right) defaults to the trip computer when there are no messages to show.



**[6] TACHOMETER** - Shows the engine speed in revolutions per minute x 1000.

#### **[7] ENGINE COOLANT**

**TEMPERATURE GAUGE** - Shows the temperature of the engine coolant.

## Information and Warning Symbols



**[1] LOW FUEL WARNING** - Comes ON when only approximately 2.3 gall of fuel is available. At 2.3 gall and 1.3 gall an audible 'beep' will sound and the 'estimated distance' message will show (for 20 seconds) in the message centre (right). The arrow head shows which side of the vehicle the fuel flap is.



**[2] LEFT TURN INDICATORS** - Flashes with the indicator or hazard warning lamps (Ignition ON).



**[3] HEADLAMPS** - Shows that the main beam of the headlamps is in use.



**[4] SIDE LAMPS** - Shows that the side lamps, dip or main beams are ON.



**[5] PATS** - If this symbol flashes continuously at ignition ON the vehicle will stay immobilised. If the symbol is ON continuously at ignition ON the vehicle will start but PATS has gone into 'Fail Safe' mode (Refer to 'Passive Anti-Theft System', page 2.11).

 **Warning:** Stop immediately if the check engine symbol flashes, do not drive the vehicle. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

[6]  **CHECK ENGINE** - Steady amber shows a fault in the engine management system. Continue driving only if there are no audible, visible or physical signs of degraded engine performance. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible.

Flashing amber shows a major fault in the engine management system. Stop immediately. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

[7]  **IGNITION WARNING** - Comes ON when the ignition is set to ON and goes OFF when the engine is started and battery charging commences. Comes ON if battery charging fails whilst driving.

[8]  **OIL PRESSURE WARNING** - Comes ON when the engine oil pressure falls below minimum. Do not continue driving if this symbol stays ON. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

 **Warning:** Do not drive the vehicle if the SRS warning symbol stays ON. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

[9]  **SUPPLEMENTARY RESTRAINT SYSTEM** - At vehicle key position 'I' and 'II' or on vehicle start up, this symbol comes ON for a few seconds as a readiness sign.

If it does not come ON, or if it does not go OFF after a few seconds, or if it comes ON whilst driving, the airbag self diagnostic system has detected a fault.

 **Warning:** Do not drive the vehicle if the seat belt warning symbol stays ON. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

[10]  **SEAT BELT WARNING** - This warning symbol will come ON and a chime will sound for six seconds if the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition is set to ON. The chime will continue to operate at different vehicle speeds until the seat belt is fastened<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup>. Market dependant.

[11]  **WARNING TRIANGLE** - Shows red or amber depending on the warning or information message priority.

 **Warning:** If the brake warning symbol stays ON, after fully releasing the park brake do not drive the vehicle. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

[12]  **BRAKE BRAKE WARNING** - At ignition ON this symbol comes ON when the park brake is applied and goes OFF when the park brake is fully released. If the symbol stays ON, after fully releasing the park brake, it shows that either the brake fluid level is low or that the brake pads require regular maintenance.

 **Warning:** If the ABS warning symbol stays ON, do not drive the vehicle. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

[13]  **ABS WARNING** - If this symbol stays ON or comes ON while driving there is a fault in the ABS control circuits. Continue driving only if there are no audible, visible or physical signs of degraded brake performance. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible if this symbol stays ON.

[14]  **TYRE PRESSURE** - If this symbol stays ON or comes ON while driving, a tire(s) air pressure is below specification.

[15]  **DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL** - If the DSC symbol stays ON at engine start up or it comes ON whilst driving, the DSC system has detected a fault. A DSC fault message will be shown in the message centre (right). Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible.



[16]  **REAR FOG LAMP** - Shows if the rear fog lamps are ON.

[17]  **RIGHT TURN INDICATORS** - Flashes with the indicator or hazard warning lamps (Ignition ON).

[18]  **HIGH COOLANT TEMPERATURE** - Shows when the engine coolant temperature exceeds 248°F.

### Low Outside Temperature

 **Warning:** *Even if the ICE WARNING message does not show, there is no guarantee that at low temperatures the road is free from ice.*

At temperatures below 39°F the message ICE WARNING is shown in the message centre (right), this shows to the driver that frost or ice is likely to form on road surfaces.

The amber warning triangle  will also come ON.

The message and warning triangle will continue to show until the outside temperature rises to a safer level.



### Warning Symbols

As the ignition is set to ON, the electronic control units complete a self check. During these checks the following symbols will come ON for five seconds and SYSTEM CHECK will show on the message centre (right). Under normal circumstances most warning symbols will go OFF at the end of the individual system check if system checks are satisfactory.



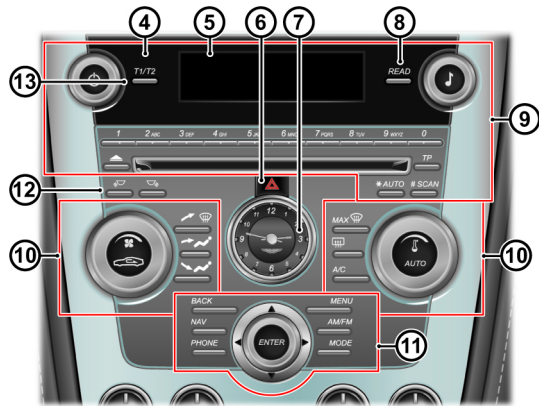
- [1] **SATELLITE NAVIGATION SCREEN<sub>1</sub>** - Opens when the Satellite Navigation system is set to ON (Refer to 'Satellite Navigation', page 10.1).
- [2] **IGNITION CONTROL** - Insert the vehicle key for ignition positions '0'. 'I', 'II' and engine start (Refer to 'Ignition Control', page 4.9).
- [3] **TRANSMISSION CONTROLS** - SportShift: comfort, reverse, neutral and auto drive transmission buttons.
- [4] **AIRBAG STATUS** - Shows the passenger airbag status (Refer to 'Front Passenger Sensing', page 3.13).
- [5] **DISPLAY** - Shows options, menus and information.



- [6] **HAZARD WARNING LAMP** - Press to set the hazard warning lamps to ON or OFF.
- [7] **CLOCK** - To set the time press **MENU**. Go to <Car settings...> Enter <Clock>.
- [8] **READ** - Press to view and acknowledge messages.
- [9] **AUDIO CONTROLS** - (Refer to 'Audio', page 8.1)
- [10] **CLIMATE CONTROLS** - (Refer to 'Climate Control', page 6.1).
- [11] **MODE AND MENU NAVIGATION** - Select functions and move back in the menus. Use the joystick to navigate for menus, music tracks, radio stations. Press to accept.
- [12] **READING LAMPS** - Driver and passenger reading lamps.
- [13] **T1/T2** - Select between two trip meters (Refer to 'Instrument Cluster', page 4.3).
- [14] **REAR FOG LAMPS** - Used with the dipped beam when fog or mist is causing restricted visibility. They **must** be set to OFF when visibility clears to reduce glare to the drivers of following vehicles.

<sup>1</sup>. Option.

**[15] DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL** - The DSC system is always ON when the ignition is ON. Press and hold for approximately four seconds for OFF. Press and release to set to ON.



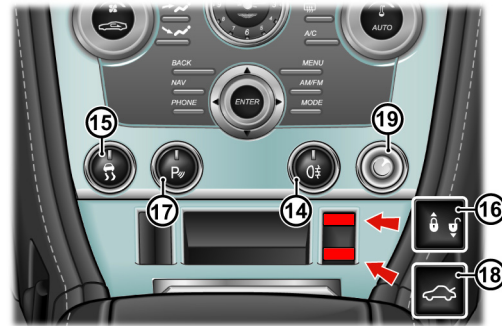
**[16] MASTER VEHICLE LOCK** - Press to lock all doors and disable the trunk lock switch. Press again to unlock (Refer to 'Master Locks', page 2.6).

**[17] PARKING ASSIST** - Defaults to OFF at each ignition ON. Park assist comes ON when reverse gear is selected. Press and release to set parking assist to OFF (Refer to 'Front and Rear Parking Assist', page 5.16) or (Refer to 'Rear Only Parking Assist', page 5.17).

**[18] BOOT OPEN** - Pull up to open the trunk lid<sub>1</sub>.  
Manual Transmission



SportShift Transmission

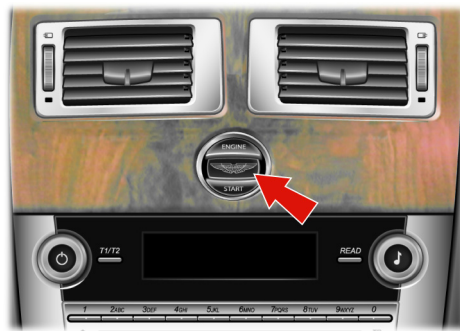


**[19] LAMY PEN HOLDER** - Push the pen in and release to access the pen.

<sub>1</sub>. On the Roadster this switch becomes the roof open and close switch.

## Ignition Control

To access vehicle functions and to start the engine the vehicle key must be inserted in to the ignition control.



**⚠ Warning:** Only use the vehicle key in the ignition control. Do not place any objects, including fingers, into the ignition control other than the vehicle key. Objects other than the vehicle key may cause the ignition control to fail.

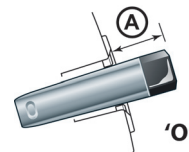
**⚠ The vehicle key must only be inserted into the ignition control with the two indents first, as shown. Attempting to insert the larger end first the key may damage the ignition control.**

### Position '0' (Ignition OFF)

Auxiliaries OFF (audio, satellite navigation, hands-free phone not available), steering lock ON. Seats can be adjusted.

Gently insert the vehicle key, indents first, into the ignition control. Press in until the key clicks into place (approximately 0.5 in (A)) then release. The key is docked at this point.

Remove by pulling the vehicle key from the ignition control.

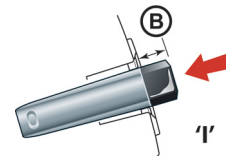


### Position 'I' (Ignition OFF and Accessories ON)

Auxiliaries ON (audio, satellite navigation, hands-free phone available), steering lock ON.

- If already in position '0' gently press the key until the infotainment centre and the instrument cluster lamps come ON (a further 0.25 in (B)) and release for position 'I'.
- Or insert the key into the ignition control and move straight to position 'I'. Press in until the infotainment centre and the instrument cluster lamps come ON.

Remove by pulling the vehicle key from the ignition control.



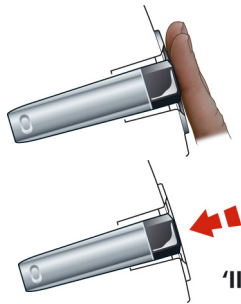
## Position 'II' (Ignition ON)

Ignition and all other electrical systems ON, steering lock OFF.

**! SportShift Transmission: Do not depress the brake pedal unless intending to start the engine.**

**Manual Transmission: Do not depress the clutch pedal unless intending to start the engine.**

 Insert the key to position 'II' by using the flat of a finger, as shown.



- If the key is already in position '0' or 'I' gently press the key until it is flush with the ignition control bezel and release.
- Or insert the key into the ignition control and move straight to position 'II'. Gently press the key until it is flush with the ignition control bezel and release.

The Instrument cluster lamps will come ON, the vehicle systems will wake up and the steering lock will release.

Remove the vehicle key from position 'II' by pressing the key fully in **twice**, without depressing the brake pedal (SportShift transmission) or the clutch pedal (manual transmission), and release. The key will gently return to position 'I'. Pull the key from the ignition control. Once in position 'I' after 10 seconds the steering lock will engage.

 If the vehicle key is pressed **fully** into the ignition control and released for position 'II', the key must be returned to position 'I' to start the engine.

## Starting the Engine

(Refer to 'Starting the Engine', page 5.2).

## Preventing Unnecessary Battery Drain

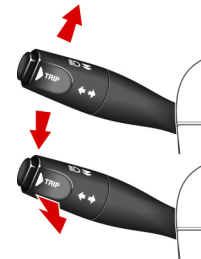
If the vehicle key is left in the ignition control (position '0'), some vehicle circuits will stay ON and unnecessary current will be drawn from the battery.

Always remove the vehicle key from the ignition control whenever the ignition is set to OFF.

## Stalk Controls

### Left Side Stalk

**Turn Signals** - Press up for a right turn, press down for a left turn. Returns to the centre position on completion of a manoeuvre. Hold against spring pressure to show a lane change.



**Main and Dipped Beam** - Pull forwards and latch for main beam. Pull forwards again and latch to return to dipped beam. Pull forwards and release without latching, at any time while the vehicle key is in the ignition control, to flash main beam ON and OFF.

Pull forwards and release without latching, when the vehicle key is removed, to start Homesafe (Refer to 'Homesafe', page 2.9).

**Trip Computer** - Repeated pressing of the trip function button (A) moves through the trip computer displays. (Refer to 'Trip Computer', page 4.13).



## Right Side Stalk

### Windshield Wiper Control

[1] - OFF.

[2] - Intermittent Wipe.

[3] - Normal Speed Wipe.

[4] - Fast Wipe.

### Demand Wipe

Pull the stalk forwards.

 The windshield wipers will return to their park position if the ignition is set to OFF or the hood is unlatched, regardless of the right stalk position.

**Speed Sensitive Wipe** - If the wipers are at fast wipe, when the vehicle slows down (below 7 mph) the wipers will go to normal wipe speed.

If the wipers are at normal speed when the vehicle slows down (below 7 mph) the wipers will go to intermittent wipe (position 2).

As soon as the vehicle speeds up (above 9 mph) the wipers will return to their original setting.



### Windshield Wiper Delay Control -

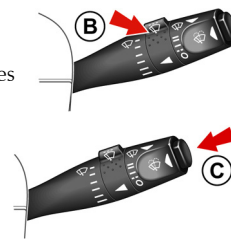
Intermittent wipe time delay increases or decreases in six steps (B). Sixth position gives the shortest delay between wipes.

**Windshield Washer Control** - Press the button (C) for more than one second to operate the windshield washers.

Operation continues until the button is released. When released the washers stop immediately but the wipers continue for a few strokes, ending with a pause and then a final wipe.

If used during normal wiper operation, the wipers operate continually irrespective of the washer operation.

**Headlamp Washers** - Headlamp washers will operate automatically, once per journey (each ignition ON), if the windshield washers are operated and the headlamps are ON.



## Master Lamp Switch

[1] - All external lamps OFF.

[2] - Side, side marker, rear and license plate lamps ON.

[3] - With the vehicle key at position 'II' in the ignition control, Headlamps ON, in addition to the side, side marker, rear and license plate lamps.

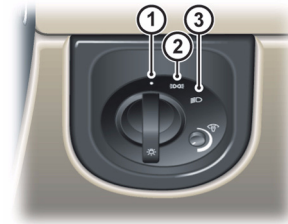
### Lamps ON Warning

If the vehicle side lamps are ON, and the drivers door is opened after the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition control, an audible warning will sound for a period of five minutes. To stop the audible warning set the lamps to OFF. The audible warning will also stop when the driver's door is shut - the lamps will stay ON.

### Day Time Running Lamps

(Canada only)

The dipped beams and side lamps are permanently ON.



### Instrument Brightness

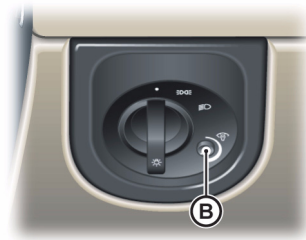
During the daylight hours the level of instrument brightness defaults to maximum brightness. During the twilight and night time hours a twilight sensor (A (located in the centre stack)) automatically reduces the level of brightness to a preset level.

 *If the twilight sensor is covered the level of brightness will stay low as if in night time mode.*



The level of brightness can be reduced by using the rotary control (B). If the brightness level has been adjusted, the twilight and night time brightness level will return to the previous setting on the rotary control, each time the sensor picks up the twilight hours.

Push the rotary control in and release to enable the control. Push in and release to lock the control.



### Vehicle Horn

To sound the horn press the centre pad of the steering wheel at any of the positions shown.

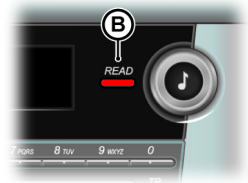


## Trip Computer

Press the button (A) for less than three seconds cycles through the trip computer functions one at a time. Trip computer information is viewed in the message centre (right).

 If an information message shows, after reading and acting on the information provided press the **READ** button (B) to return to the trip display.

**Range** - Estimated travel distance with fuel available (no reset). The minimum distance shown will read 15 mile. Below this distance will show '- - -'.



**Average Fuel** - Average fuel consumption since last reset. Press A for more than three seconds but less than five seconds to reset. Press A for five seconds or more will reset both the average fuel consumption and average speed. INFOCENTER IS RESET will be shown in the message centre (right). Press the **READ** button to acknowledge the message.

**Instantaneous Fuel** - Shows the fuel consumption over the last three seconds of travel (no reset).

**Average Speed** - Shows the average speed since last reset. Press A for more than three seconds but less than five seconds to reset. Press A for five seconds or more will reset both the average speed and average fuel consumption. INFOCENTER IS RESET will be shown in the message centre (right). Press the **READ** button to acknowledge the message.



**Present Speed** - Shows the current vehicle speed.

 Driver aid only.

 Trip computer default screen.



**Tire Pressure Monitor** - Shows the current tire pressure for all tires (Refer to 'Tire Pressure Monitoring', page 4.16).

**Blank Screen** - Blank screen will show.

### Display Units

The display can be set to show metric or imperial units.



With the ignition ON press the **READ** button (C) and the Trip Computer button (D) together for two seconds to change the trip computer display units.



## Cruise Control

Cruise control can be used to maintain a selected vehicle speed, above 18.6 mph, without having to use the accelerator.

- [1] RES** - Resume the set speed retained in memory.
- [2] SET** - Set the speed, accelerate or decelerate.
- [3] ON/OFF** - Sets cruise control to ON or OFF.
- [4] CAN** - Cancels cruise control but keeps the set speed in memory.



### Operation

**⚠ Warning: Only use cruise control when conditions are favorable, for example, straight, dry, open roads with light traffic.**

Use the **ON/OFF** switch (3) to set cruise control ON and OFF. When cruise control is ON 'CRUISE' will show in the message centre (left). When travelling at the desired speed, which must be above 18.6 mph, press **SET** (+ or -) (2). Cruise control will engage and maintain that speed without the need to use the accelerator pedal.

Under certain conditions cruise control will automatically set to OFF (Refer to 'Cruise Control Automatic OFF', page 4.15).

Cruise control will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is pressed or when the vehicle speed falls below 18.6 mph.

### Changing the Set Speed

There are three ways to change the set speed:

- Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed then press **SET** (+ or -).
- Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed by pressing and holding **SET** (+ or -) until the desired speed is obtained, then release.
- Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed in steps of 1.2 mph by briefly pressing and releasing **SET** (+ or -) until the desired speed is obtained.



## Resuming the Set Speed

 **RES should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.**

 **It is not recommended to resume set speed when a low gear is selected as excessive engine speeds will occur.**

 Cruise control will not resume at speeds below 18.6 mph. **RES** will not operate if the ignition has been set to OFF.

If the vehicle is accelerated above the set speed, then the set speed will be resumed when the accelerator pedal is released.

If **CAN** (4) is pressed, or the brake or clutch pedal is pressed, cruise control will disengage but the set speed memory will be kept. Press **RES** (1) and the vehicle will return to the set speed.

## Cruise Control Automatic OFF

Cruise control will automatically set to OFF and clear the memory when:

- The ignition is set to OFF
- A fault occurs. The cruise control system will set to OFF and cannot be used until the fault is cleared
- The park brake is applied
- Maximum vehicle speed is reached

Cruise control will automatically set to OFF but the set speed will stay in the memory when:

- The **CAN** button is pressed
- The brake pedal is pressed
- Vehicle speed falls below 18.6 mph
- Neutral, Park or Reverse gear positions are selected
- The difference between the actual and set speed is too great
- When the set speed is above 89.4 mph; cruise control will disengage automatically after approximately 20 minutes
- The accelerator pedal is used to accelerate beyond the set speed for too long a period

## Ambient Temperature

The ambient temperature (outside temperature) is shown in the top right corner of the Infotainment centre display.

 *If the vehicle has been travelling and then is stopped in a shaded or enclosed area the ambient temperature may rise, this is due to the heat from the engine bay. The ambient temperature display will show the true ambient temperature once the vehicle is moving again or the engine bay cools down.*

 *If required the display units can be changed from °C to °F or °F to °C (Refer to 'Climate Controls', page 6.2).*

## Tire Pressure Monitoring

**⚠ Warning: Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.**

Each tire should be checked monthly when cold, in the ambient air temperature that the vehicle is normally driven. Setting tire pressures in a warm garage and then driving in a very low ambient may result in a low tire pressure warning. Set the correct pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (if your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size shown on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should make sure of the correct tire pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that sets a tire pressure telltale (warning) symbol to ON (A) when one or more of the tires is significantly under or over inflated. At the same time an image of vehicle in the message centre (right) will show which tire(s) have low or high air pressure and the current tire pressure. When the tire pressure telltale comes ON, stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate or deflate them to the correct pressure.

 The TPMS is not a substitute for correct tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressures, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to set the TPMS tire pressure telltale symbol to ON.

### Malfunction Telltale

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction telltale to show when the system is not operating correctly. The TPMS malfunction telltale is combined with the tire pressure telltale.

When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then stay ON. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.



When the malfunction telltale is ON, the system may not be able to detect or send tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions can occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from operating correctly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to make sure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function correctly.

### Operation

**⚠ When a tire pressure warning is detected reduce the vehicle speed to an appropriate safe level and stop at the first safe and convenient place to inspect the tire(s).**

At each ignition ON there is a short delay before tire pressures are received, from the wheel and tire transmitters, and shown in the message centre (right).

If the tire telltale symbol comes ON while driving, reduce speed to 30 mph and stop in safe place as soon as possible. Check the status of the tire(s) in the message centre (right):

## Warning One

### Telltale Symbol

Constant

### Message centre (right)

CHECK TYRES (for ten seconds) followed by an image which shows which tire(s) is affected and the current tire pressures.

### Fault

Tire pressure below or above specification

### Action

Check the tire pressure of the affected tire(s). Set the tire pressure to the manufacturer's recommended pressure, as shown on the tire label located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar.



## Warning Two

### Telltale Symbol

Flashing for 75 seconds then constant

### Message centre (right)

TYRE SYSTEM FAULT (for ten seconds) followed by an image which shows which tire(s) is affected and the current tire pressures or which transmitter is at fault.

### Fault

System failure or tire transmitter fault

### Possible Cause

- The TPMS sensors have become defective
- Wheels and tires have been installed which do not have TPMS sensors
- An unapproved accessory is interfering with the TPMS
- A general fault has been detected in the TPMS



## Action

Continue at a reduced speed of 30 mph maximum. Have the control unit and the tire transmitters checked at the earliest opportunity. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer

## Display Units

The display can be set to show metric or imperial units.

With the ignition ON press the **READ** button (C) and the Trip Computer button (D) together for three seconds to change the trip computer display units.





ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

# Driving

|                               |     |                                    |      |
|-------------------------------|-----|------------------------------------|------|
| Driving Safety.....           | 5.2 | Footbrake .....                    | 5.10 |
| Starting the Engine .....     | 5.2 | Anti-Lock Braking System .....     | 5.10 |
| SportShift Transmission ..... | 5.4 | Park Brake .....                   | 5.11 |
| Auto Drive Buttons.....       | 5.4 | Dynamic Stability Control .....    | 5.12 |
| Paddle Shift Controls.....    | 5.6 | Fuel Filling .....                 | 5.14 |
| SportShift Features .....     | 5.7 | Catalytic Converters .....         | 5.15 |
| Clutch Warnings.....          | 5.8 | Front and Rear Parking Assist..... | 5.16 |
| Manual Transmission.....      | 5.9 | Rear Only Parking Assist.....      | 5.17 |
|                               |     | Driving Techniques .....           | 5.18 |

## Driving Safety

- Always wear your seat belt
- Never drive under the influence of alcohol or drugs
- Always obey all speed and traffic laws and regulations. Never drive faster than the posted speed limit or than conditions allow
- Be particularly careful driving on slippery or wet surfaces
- This vehicle is a high performance vehicle and has handling characteristics you may not be accustomed to. Familiarise yourself with the vehicle and always drive prudently, being aware of your own limitations and the limitations of the vehicle. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate the vehicle correctly can result in accident and injury
- Follow the maintenance schedule approved in this guide
- Never allow the vehicle to be driven by inexperienced drivers

## Starting the Engine

**⚠ Warning: Only use the vehicle key in the ignition control. Do not place any objects, including fingers, into the ignition control other than the vehicle key. Objects other than the vehicle key may cause the ignition control unit to fail.**

**⚠ In extreme low temperatures (4°F and below) do not allow the engine to 'rev' above 4000 rpm, while at standstill or when moving off, until the coolant temperature gauge reaches normal operating temperature. Revving the engine before fully warmed up may cause severe engine and transaxle damage.**

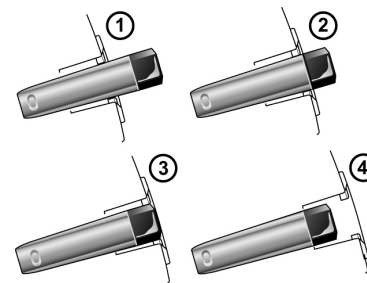
**⚠ Do not press the vehicle key while driving. If the key is pressed in and released the engine will stop. If the key is removed from the ignition control while driving the engine will stop but the steering lock will not engage until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.**

**⚠ The vehicle key must only be inserted into the ignition control with the two indents first, as shown. Attempting to insert the larger end first the key may damage the ignition control.**



**📖** Make sure that you are wearing appropriate footwear to efficiently operate the control pedals. Make sure that pedal movement is not restricted by floor mats or other objects trapped beneath pedals.

### Ignition Sequence



[1] - Position '0' (Ignition OFF)

[2] - Position 'I' (Ignition OFF and Accessories ON)

[3] - Position 'II' (Ignition ON)

[4] - Engine start

## Engine Start

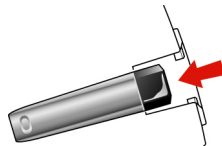
Check that the park brake is applied.

- **SportShift Transmission:** Fully press the brake pedal down.
- **Manual transmission:** Fully press the clutch pedal down.

Insert the vehicle key into the ignition control and press the key fully in (the ignition control will show red), hold in until the engine starts then release.

The vehicle key will sit flush with the ignition control bezel while the engine is running. The ignition control will show a white light when the engine is running, and then fade out.

 When starting the engine the vehicle system will take short time (approximately one second) to complete a system check and release the steering lock before allowing the engine to crank.



If the engine fails to start, release the key, then press the key fully in again **without depressing the**

- SportShift Transmission: Brake pedal
- Manual transmission: Clutch pedal

and release. The key will gently return to position 'I'. Start the engine start procedure again.

## Starting From Cold

The Engine Control Module (ECM) automatically compensates for cold or warm start conditions and makes appropriate adjustments to the fuel and air mixture and ignition timing.

## Stopping the Engine

Press the vehicle key fully in and release. The engine will stop as the key returns to position 'I'. Withdraw the vehicle key from the ignition control.

**SportShift Transmission** - As the ignition is set to OFF first or reverse gear (depending if the vehicle was set to OFF while in first or reverse) will stay selected. If the transmission is in neutral then first gear will be selected.

 If this vehicle is required to be towed, neutral can be selected at ignition OFF (Refer to 'Vehicle Recovery', page 11.21).

## Maximum Engine Speed

The maximum safe engine speed is 7,000rpm. If this speed is exceeded, fuel supply to the engine is reduced. As the engine speed reduces back to a safe level, fuel supply is progressively restored.



## SportShift Transmission

**⚠ Warning:** Always secure the vehicle with the brakes when stopped. As with any transmission using a gearbox and clutch arrangement the vehicle will roll once the clutch is disengaged.

Vehicles installed with the SportShift transmission have a manual gearbox and clutch arrangement. Most manual gearbox and clutch arrangements have a clutch pedal which when pressed lifts the clutch away from the flywheel, disengaging the engine from the drive line, enabling gearshifts. The SportShift transmission uses a Transmission Control Module and an Electro-hydraulic control unit to replace the clutch pedal and make gearshifts.

Two modes of gear selection are available.

### Auto Drive Mode

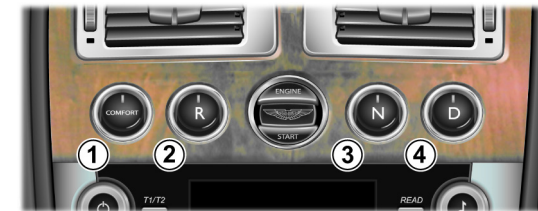
In auto drive mode gearshifts are made according to various driving parameters, i.e. road speed, current selected gear and accelerator demands. Forward, reverse and neutral gears are selected by using the auto drive buttons. While in auto drive mode move to paddle shift mode at any time by pulling back pulling back on either the upshift or downshift gearshift paddles, mounted behind the steering wheel.

### Paddle Shift Mode

In paddle shift mode forward gears and neutral are selected by using the paddles located behind the steering wheel. Reverse is selected by using the auto drive buttons. While in paddle shift mode move to auto drive mode at any time by pressing the **DRIVE** button.

📖 *Neutral can also be selected by pressing the neutral Auto Drive button.*

## Auto Drive Buttons



**[1] Comfort (Vantage) / Sport (Vantage S)** - Press and release at any time while driving to start (button LED ON) and stop comfort / sport mode.

**[2] Reverse** - When stationary and with the footbrake applied, press and release to select reverse. When reverse is selected, **R** will show red in the Gear Position Indicator Display (GPID) (B) and a warning will be heard.

**[3] Neutral** - When stationary and with the footbrake applied, press and release to select neutral.

**[4] Drive** - When stationary and with the footbrake applied, press and release to select forward gears.

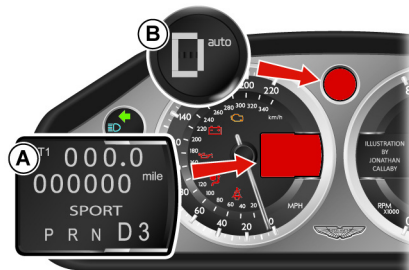


 If the brake pedal is not pressed the message centre (right) will show *PRESS BRAKE PEDAL* and a warning will sound.

The message centre (left) (A) shows the current gear selection R, D1, D2, etc., while the Gear Position Indicator Display (GPID) (B) shows D (drive), R (reverse) or P (park) according to current gear position.

As vehicle speed reduces the SportShift system will open and close the clutch and downshift as engine speed drops to below 750 rpm in each gear.

 *Vantage only: If no pressure is detected on the accelerator pedal once the handbrake and footbrake are released then the transmission will enter the SportShift crawl feature.*



### Vehicle Rocking Motion

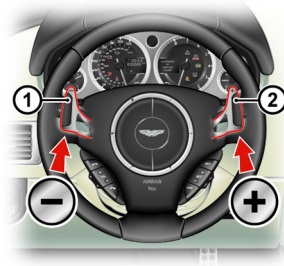
If the vehicle speed is less than 2.5 mph, R (reverse) may be selected from D (drive), without pressing the brake pedal, to create a vehicle 'rocking' motion i.e. to enable vehicle movement out of mud, snow, etc. If 2.5 mph is exceeded then the transmission will automatically select N (neutral).

### Kick-Down

Kick-down is used in circumstances where rapid acceleration is required, i.e. when overtaking. Kick-down is when the accelerator pedal is quickly and fully depressed, causing the transmission to change down to the lowest gear possible to achieve maximum acceleration. The gear engaged depends on the road speed at the time of kick-down.

## Paddle Shift Controls

Forward gearshifts are selected by pulling back and releasing the gearshift paddles mounted on the steering column. Neutral is selected by pulling back both paddles together and releasing. Park and reverse are selected by using the centre stack mounted auto drive buttons.



[1] - Downshift paddle.

[2] - Upshift paddle.

Neutral can also be selected by pressing N.

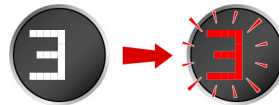
From park, reverse or neutral, and with the footbrake applied, pull back on either the upshift or downshift gearshift paddle to enter paddle shift mode. As the vehicle speed increases and decreases, make upshifts and downshifts by pulling and releasing the upshift or downshift gearshift paddle. When shifting up through the gears maintain foot pressure on the accelerator pedal.

Vantage only: If no pressure is detected on the accelerator pedal once the handbrake and footbrake are released then the transmission will enter the SportShift crawl feature

If a downshift request is not detected during speed reduction, downshifts will occur as engine speed drops.

By pulling and releasing the upshift or downshift paddle in quick succession up and down shifts can be 'skipped', i.e. fifth to third or third to fifth (if the up or down shift requests are within the engine and transmission operating limits).

The message centre (left) and the GPID will show the current gear selection. If the vehicle engine speed reaches its upper operating limit in a particular gear an upshift will not be made until a paddle upshift request has been detected. To inform the driver that the upper operating limit has been reached the GPID gear symbol will change from white to flashing red.



## Hyper-shift

When an upshift is made with the engine speed at or above 5,500 rpm and the accelerator pedal is fully depressed the requested upshift will be accelerated, providing a quicker, sportier driving experience. Not available when the comfort feature is ON.

## SportShift Features

### Crawl

*(Vantage Only)*

**⚠ Warning:** Always secure the vehicle with the brakes when at rest. The brakes must be used to prevent the vehicle rolling on any incline.

**⚠** The crawl feature will not maintain vehicle speed or position on an incline.

**⚠** When moving at slow speeds on any incline always use the accelerator along with the brakes to maintain vehicle speed or position. As with any transmission using a gearbox and clutch arrangement the vehicle will roll once the clutch is disengaged.

The crawl feature enhances the vehicle's low speed driveability when on level ground. This is particularly useful when in a slow moving queue of traffic, parking, etc.

**When Driving** - As vehicle speed falls below 6.5 mph, and no pressure is being applied to the accelerator or the brake pedal the transmission will continue to move the vehicle at a controlled speed of 6.5 mph. This will continue until either the brakes are applied or pressure is detected on the accelerator pedal.

**From Standstill** - At standstill with first or reverse gear selected and the footbrake or park brake is applied, the clutch will be disengaged. If the brakes are released but no pressure is detected on the accelerator pedal, the clutch will progressively engage and the vehicle will move rearwards, up to a controlled speed of 6.5 mph, or forwards, up to a controlled speed of 8.7 mph (1st gear) or 10 mph (2nd gear). This will continue until either the brakes are applied or pressure is detected on the accelerator pedal.

**⚠ Take care when in crawl when the gearbox is cold. The crawl feature speeds increase: 10 mph (1st gear), 16 mph (2nd gear) and 8.7 mph (reverse gear).**

**Moving From Standstill without Crawl** - At standstill with first or reverse gear selected keep the brakes applied and open the door. With the door open, release the brakes and gently apply pressure to the accelerator pedal. If no pressure is detected on the accelerator pedal after three seconds then the transmission will select neutral. If the driver's door is opened while in crawl, vehicle movement will continue. The crawl speed will be marginally higher when the engine idle speed is increased, i.e. during a cold start, until the engine idle speed decreases.

### Comfort Button

*(Vantage Only)*

Comfort mode gives you a more comfortable driving experience. When the comfort feature is ON the comfort button LED will come ON and SPORT will disappear from the message centre (left).

**Auto Drive Mode** - When comfort is ON gearshift speeds will be reduced and gear upshifts will occur earlier, providing a more comfortable driving experience.

**Paddle Shift Mode** - When comfort is ON gearshift speeds will be reduced, providing a more comfortable driving experience.

### Sport Mode

*(Vantage S Only)*

Sport mode gives you a more engaging driving experience. To maximise the vehicle's response the Engine Control Module (ECM) adjusts the engine throttle response, exhaust valve operation and available engine torque.



Sport mode can be selected while in auto drive or paddle shift modes. Press and release the Sport button (A) to enter or exit sport mode. The Sport button LED will come ON and SPORT will show in the message centre (left) when sport mode is ON.

**Auto Drive Mode** - Upshifts and downshifts occur at higher engine speeds to provide a sportier drive.

If sport mode is selected while in auto drive sixth gear a downshift to fifth gear will occur (this will not happen if cruise control is ON) and sixth gear will be inhibited until sport mode is set to OFF.

**Paddle Shift Mode** - Automatic upshifts are prevented, the upshift paddle must be pulled back and released to make an upshift (downshifts will occur automatically if the engine speed lowers to its minimum operating limits).

To maintain speed and smoothness while driving in paddle shift sport mode, the current gear, shown in the GPID, will flash red at the optimum time to make an upshift.

To protect the engine and transmission, when in paddle shift mode, an automatic upshift from fifth to sixth gear will occur when the engine speed reaches 6600 rpm.

### Hill Start Assist

*(Vantage S Only)*

The hill start assist function helps when drive off on a hill. If the foot brake is applied for a time when the vehicle is stationary, the brake pressure is retained for brief a moment after the brake pedal is released – relaxed starting on any hill or incline with no roll-back. The hill start assist function gives assistance and safety for driving off on an incline. As you change from the brake to the accelerator pedal, the brake pressure is retained for brief a moment, the vehicle will remain stationary for long enough so you can move off without rolling back.

### Clutch Warnings

Excessive demands placed on the clutch, for example, from holding the vehicle on an incline using the throttle only or in crawl mode<sup>1</sup>, will operate a two stage clutch overheat warning.

#### Stage One

The amber warning symbol will come ON, and a single audible warning will sound. The message centre (right) will show the message CLUTCH OVERHEAT BRAKE OR PULL AWAY. The driver should reduce the demand on the clutch by increasing the demand on the accelerator pedal or releasing the accelerator pedal and applying the footbrake or park brake. Should clutch overheat be recognized while the transmission is in crawl, crawl will be, progressively, disabled. When the clutch temperature has reduced to an acceptable level crawl is reinstated.

If the demand on the clutch is not reduced and the clutch temperature continues to increase, the second stage of clutch overheat strategy shall be invoked.

---

<sup>1</sup>. Vantage only.

## Stage Two

(Vantage Only)

Crawl will be disabled and the message CLUTCH PROTECT MODE and CRAWL DISABLED will show as a rolling message with the amber triangle until the clutch temperature returns to normal operating limits. During this time gearshift and moving off performance will be degraded to let the clutch to cool.

(Vantage S Only)

The message CLUTCH PROTECT MODE and SHIFT COMFORT REDUCED will show as a rolling message with the amber triangle until the clutch temperature returns to normal operating limits. During this time gearshift and moving off performance will be degraded to let the clutch to cool.

## Limp-Home Mode

Certain SportShift system faults will place the vehicle into limp home mode. If the vehicle has gone into limp-home mode the message centre (right) will show GEARBOX FAULT REDUCED FUNCTION. While in limp-home mode the vehicle can still be driven but only first, second and reverse gears will be available. Comfort mode will be not be available. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

## Manual Transmission

The manual transmission features a six speed gearbox.

### Gearshifts

When shifting gear make sure that the clutch pedal is fully depressed.

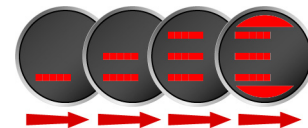
Reverse gear is selected by overcoming spring resistance. A red 'R' will show in the Gear Shift Indicator Display (GSID) and a single audible warning will sound when the transmission is in reverse.

To avoid excessive clutch wear make sure that you do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal.



To inform the driver that the current gear has reached its upper rev. limit the GSID will show revs increasing (one bar, two bars, three bars then three bars flashing). To avoid hitting the rev. limiter shift gear before or as the GSID reaches three flashing bars.

 For the first 1243 mile and when ever the engine temperature is below 104°F the upper rev. limit control will provide early shift changes to protect the engine.



## Footbrake

The footbrake operates through a vacuum boosted, dual (diagonal split) circuit, hydraulic system incorporating an Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).

 **Warning:** *In the event of a brake failure bring the vehicle to a halt as soon as it is safe to do so. Do not continue to drive.*

 **If vacuum boost fails or one circuit fails the footbrake will still operate but with greater pedal pressure, increased pedal travel and longer stopping distances.**

 **After a long drive over salted or gritted roads or if driving in heavy rain, through water or a vehicle wash, the braking action may be delayed and increased braking pressure may be required.**

 Vacuum boost is only available while the engine is running.

### Brake Warnings

 **Warning:** *If the brake warning symbol comes ON, you should immediately be prepared for possible increased stopping distances and possible partial failure of the braking system.*

While driving, if the brake warning symbol  **BRAKE** comes ON, it shows either that:

- The park brake is not fully released
- The brake pads require regular maintenance
- The brake fluid level has fallen below an acceptable level
- The Electronic Brake Distribution (EBD) system has stopped working.

 A warning message will show in the message centre (right).

Stop, as soon as possible in a safe and convenient place. Apply the footbrake and make sure that the park brake is fully released. If the park brake is fully released and the warning symbol stays ON, **do not drive** the vehicle. Contact the nearest Aston Martin Dealer. It is essential that the brake system is checked immediately, preferably by an Aston Martin Dealer.

 **Brake Noise:** *The high performance brake system used on this vehicle is designed to provide optimal braking under all operating conditions. However, under all driving conditions an inherent characteristic of this braking system is some brake noise. Certain combinations of speed, braking forces and ambient conditions may also cause the brakes to squeal.*

## Anti-Lock Braking System

The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) helps prevent the road wheels from locking and skidding during emergency braking. This also assists the driver in maintaining steering and directional stability.

If, in an emergency braking situation, the braking force applied begins to exceed the tire to road adhesion, the ABS operates to prevent the road wheels locking. When this happens a pulsating effect is felt through the brake pedal. This is a normal ABS effect.

### Safety

In all cases it is always the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions. The fact that a vehicle is equipped with ABS must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users.

The addition of ABS cannot overcome the consequences of trying to stop in too short a distance, cornering at too high a speed, or the risk of aquaplaning (where the tires are prevented from contacting the road surface by a layer of water).

The driver should always take road conditions into account. A slippery road surface always requires more braking distance for a given speed, even with ABS. Possible extensions of stopping distance compared to locked wheels may occur during ABS operation on slushy snow, gravel, sand or certain heavily corrugated or ridged warning sections of road surfaces.

If any braking system malfunction occurs, immediately have the Braking and ABS systems checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.

### ABS Warning

**⚠ Warning: If the ABS warning symbol comes ON, you should be aware that wheels could lock during extreme braking or when braking on slippery surfaces.**

ABS is monitored for correct operation while the ignition is ON. If a fault is detected, the ABS warning symbol  will come ON and the ABS will be partly or fully OFF. Normal braking will continue to function without ABS.

In the event of an ABS fault, consult your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

## Park Brake

**⚠ Always fully apply the park brake before leaving the vehicle.**

To apply the park brake: Press the footbrake pedal firmly down. Keep the pedal pressed down and pull the park brake lever up until resistance is felt. At this point depress the park brake button and continue to pull the park brake lever up to its fullest extent. Release the button and allow the lever to lower.

 To show that the park brake is applied the brake warning symbol on the instrument cluster will come ON (if the ignition is ON).

To release the handbrake: Press the footbrake pedal firmly down. Keep the pedal pressed down and pull the park brake lever up until resistance is felt. Pull up against the resistance and depress the release button. Keep the button depressed and push the lever down. If the park brake lever is not fully OFF, the brake warning symbol will stay ON.

**⚠ Always check that the brake warning symbol is OFF before moving off. Do not attempt to drive the vehicle if the brake warning symbol stays ON.**

 An audible warning will sound if the vehicle is moving and the park brake is still applied.

- If the vehicle is parked on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the kerb
- If the vehicle is parked on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel towards the kerb

### Vantage S Only

The hill start assist function helps when drive off on a hill. If the foot brake is applied for a time when the vehicle is stationary, the brake pressure is retained for brief a moment after the brake pedal is released – relaxed starting on any hill or incline with no roll-back. The hill start assist function gives assistance and safety for driving off on an incline. As you change from the brake to the accelerator pedal, the brake pressure is retained for brief a moment, the vehicle will remain stationary for long enough so you can move off without rolling back.

## Dynamic Stability Control

**⚠ Warning:** *It is the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must never let the driver be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users. DSC cannot overcome consequences of applying too much engine power for prevailing conditions.*

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is a system designed to enhance driving safety by improving the vehicle handling when the tires are at the limits of their grip capabilities. This is achieved through the reduction of engine torque and strategic application of the brakes at individual wheels.

### Driver Interface and Control

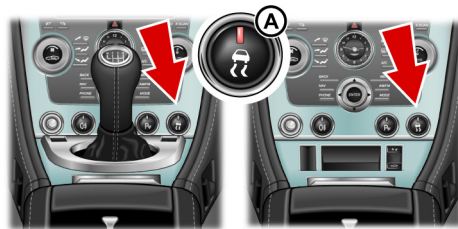
**⚠** *If repair or replacement of the steering or other surrounding equipment is necessary, always refer to your Aston Martin Dealer. If the centre position of the steering deviates, the DSC system may not operate correctly because there is a sensor in the steering system which detects steering wheel position.*

**⚠** *The DSC system may not operate correctly when using tire chains or a temporary spare tire.*

**⚠** *Use tires of the same manufacturer, brand, tread pattern and correct size specified for this vehicle on all four road wheels. Do not mix worn tires.*

### Vantage

The DSC system is set to ON when the engine is started. When the system is operating, the DSC warning symbol will flash. DSC can be set to OFF by pressing the DSC button (A) for a minimum of four seconds. Press and release the DSC button again to set DSC to ON.



**📖** *The DSC button LED and the DSC symbol (instrument cluster) will come ON when the system is set to OFF.*

**📖** *DSC FUNCTION OFF will show in the message centre (right) to show that DSC is OFF.*

### Vantage S

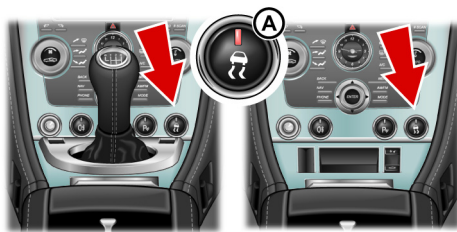
DSC has three modes of operation:

**ON** - The DSC system sets to ON each time the engine is started. DSC is controlling engine torque and applying strategic application of the brakes at individual wheels.

While the DSC system operates to correct the vehicle stability the

DSC symbol , on the instrument cluster, will flash.





**TRACK MODE** - Press and hold the DSC button (A) for four seconds and release. DSC TRACK MODE SELECTED will show in the message centre (right) and the DSC symbol will be ON in the instrument cluster. This raises the thresholds at which the DSC system operates. While the DSC system operates to correct the vehicle stability the DSC symbol will flash.

**OFF** - When in track mode press and hold the DSC button for four seconds and release to set the DSC to OFF. DSC OFF can not be selected from DSC on. DSC FUNCTION OFF will show in the message centre (right) and the DSC symbol will show in the instrument cluster. DSC is no longer controlling engine torque and applying strategic application of the brakes at individual wheels.

At any time while in track or off mode, press and release the DSC button to start DSC.

*The DSC button LED and the DSC symbol (instrument cluster) will come ON when the system is set to track or off mode.*

### Fault Signs

A malfunction in the DSC control system will be shown by the following:

- The DSC symbol in the instrument cluster will come ON
- A warning message will show in the message centre (right) depending on the fault detected

### Traction Control

**Warning:** *It is always the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions.*

**Warning:** *Traction control must never let the driver be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users.*

**Warning:** *Traction control cannot overcome consequences of applying too much engine power for prevailing conditions.*

Traction control is a function of DSC, and is operated in association with the DSC system. Traction control prevents excessive wheel spin at standing starts, or during acceleration. Wheel spin is usually caused by excessive use of the accelerator pedal, or slippery, loose or bumpy road surfaces.

To prevent excessive wheel spin and maintain vehicle stability in such situations the traction control system will:

- Brake either of the driven wheels when they start to slip
- And, or, adapt the engine torque to a level corresponding to the traction available on the road surface

*These symptoms are normal and will clear as wheel spin is eliminated and normal engine power is restored.*

*If cruise control is on it will automatically go OFF when traction control is operating.*

During operation, the DSC warning symbol will flash. The driver may experience a loss in power or temporary 'misfire' as engine power is reduced.

If traction control cuts in when driving on extended icy or slippery surfaces, reduce engine power as necessary until the DSC warning symbol goes OFF.

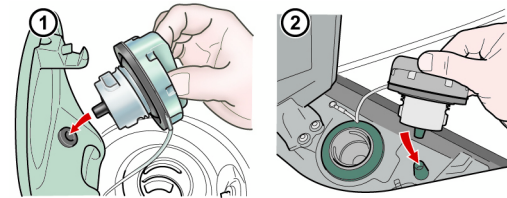
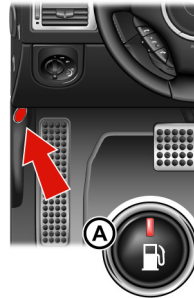
Traction control is always ON when DSC is ON.

## Fuel Filling

 *The fuel tank filler neck has a restricted opening which will only accept the fuel supply nozzle of unleaded fuel pumps.*

Open the fuel flap by pressing the fuel flap release button (A (located in the driver's footwell)). If the filler flap will not open when the release button is pressed, use the fuel filler flap emergency release.

Turn the cap counterclockwise past resistance, then lift off. Place the cap into its holder. Install the cap by turning clockwise past resistance, until three 'clicks' are felt as the cap is fully tightened. Close and latch the fuel flap.



**[1]** - Coupe

**[2]** - Roadster

The fuel system will not let the fuel tank overfill but there will be times when the fuel nozzle will shut OFF prematurely. If this happens only try to fill the fuel tank one more time, continued attempts will result in fuel spillage. Wait 10 seconds before removing the refuelling nozzle.

### Fuel Filler Bowl

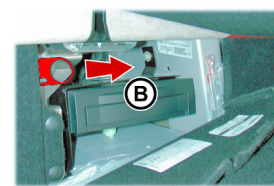
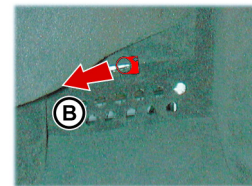
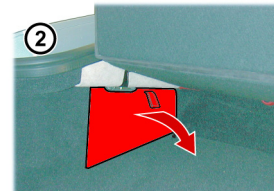
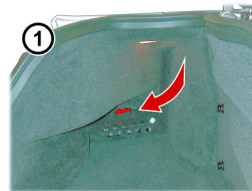
To stop water gathering in the fuel filler bowl and flowing into the fuel tank, the fuel filler bowl has a pipe to let the water drain from the bowl. During fuel filling, check and make sure that any debris which may block the pipe is removed.

## Fuel Filler Flap Emergency Release

If the filler flap will not open when the release button is pressed, open the filler flap manually.

**[1] Roadster** - Reach through the left side trunk trim to access the manual fuel filler flap release. Pull the lever (B) to open the filler flap.

**[2] Coupe** - Remove the left side trunk trim to access the manual fuel filler flap release. Pull the lever (B) to open the filler flap.



## Fuel Cut-OFF

In the event of a vehicle accident the vehicle electronics will enter crash mode. Power to the fuel pumps will stop, thereby reducing fire risk.

## Catalytic Converters

**⚠ Warning:** Do not park over dry grass, leaves or other combustible material. Significant fire risk exists because of residual heat in the catalytic converters.

**⚠ Warning:** Do not drive through deep water. Rapid cooling of catalysts may cause them to break up.

Catalytic converters convert harmful exhaust gasses into less noxious substances and so reduce environmental pollution. They operate at high temperatures and continue to radiate a considerable amount of heat after the ignition has been set to OFF.

Leaded fuel will cause irreparable damage to catalytic converters. If leaded fuel is inadvertently added to the fuel tank **do not start the engine, do not drive the vehicle**. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

## Front and Rear Parking Assist

(Option)

**⚠ Warning: Parking assist does not replace need for total vigilance and caution when parking or reversing.**

**⚠ It is always the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them. Some overhanging objects, barriers, thin obstructions or painted surfaces which could possibly cause damage to the vehicle may not be detected by the system. Always be vigilant when reversing.**

**⚠ The rear sensors are not ON when neutral is selected, therefore care should be taken if moving the vehicle as the warning sound will not be heard.**

**⚠ Do not clean the sensors with abrasive or sharp objects.**

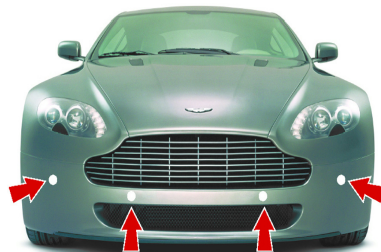
 For reliable operation, the sensors in the front and rear bumpers should be kept free from ice, frost and grime.

 When using a high pressure spray the sensors should only be sprayed briefly and not from a distance of less than 8 in. Do not clean the sensors with abrasive materials.

A warning will be heard when driving forwards or rearwards, if objects are detected within range of the vehicle.

### Operation

**⚠ If, for example, you are driving within a confined space such as a home garage, the outer sensors will detect the side walls and after three seconds the tone will stop. However, as movement continues, the inner sensors will eventually detect the rear wall and will start the tone again.**



**⚠ In heavy rain or similar adverse conditions, the rear parking assist sensors may not always be able to accurately measure distance to close objects. A fully laden vehicle or irregular obstacles may also cause inaccurate measurements.**

The parking assist system defaults to OFF when the ignition is set to ON. The system comes ON when reverse gear is selected, or if the parking assist button (A) is pressed at speeds below 9.3 mph. The system will set to OFF when the vehicle moves forwards above 9.3 mph. The parking assist button LED will come ON when the system is set to ON. The LED will flash if a fault is detected in the system.



If an obstacle is detected at the front or rear of the vehicle, a series of beeps will be heard from the front or rear speaker respectively, which increases in rate as the vehicle nears the obstacle.

The beep becomes a continuous tone when an obstacle is detected at or within approximately 12 in from the rear or 10 in from the front of the vehicle.

If the system has a fault a single three second tone will be heard (only once per ignition cycle) and the parking assist button LED will blink when reverse gear is selected or the ignition is set to ON. The system is automatically disabled when a fault is detected.

Parking assist may sound spurious tones if it detects an ultrasonic frequency using the same band as the sensors.

The system consists of inner and outer sensors. When manoeuvring forward into a garage, etc., the front outer sensors will cease detection if they detect a stationary or receding object for three seconds or more, this allows detection directly at the front of the vehicle in this type of manoeuvre.

## Rear Only Parking Assist

(Option)

**Warning:** Rear parking assist does not replace need for total vigilance and caution when parking or reversing.

**When parking or reversing make full use of rearward vision and all mirrors to be aware of persons or objects in the vicinity of the vehicle. Take appropriate measures to protect them from danger.**

**In heavy rain or similar adverse conditions, the rear parking assist sensors may not always be able to accurately measure distance to close objects. A fully laden vehicle or irregular obstacles may also cause inaccurate measurements.**

Rear parking assist assists in detecting obstructions as the vehicle is reversed towards them. The system is ON when reverse gear is selected. When the system is operating an intermittent 'beep' signal will be heard. The 'beep' frequency increases in pitch and persistence as the vehicle reverses to an obstruction.



Set parking assist to OFF by pressing the parking assist button (A) if required (button LED OFF). For reliable operation, the parking sensors should be kept free from ice, frost and grime.



## Driving Techniques

Procedures for driving this vehicle may be unfamiliar to many new owners. To make sure that you have a safe and enjoyable entry into this new phase of Aston Martin motoring please take time to safely acquire the necessary new driving skills. Practise in safe, lower speed conditions before investigating the high performance potential of the vehicle.

Performance Driving Courses are available to enable customers not only to understand the control functions of their vehicle but also the basic principles of Performance Driving.

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer for further information.

## Wet Conditions

When driving in wet conditions, water can build up under your tires so that they ride on a layer of water. This is called aquaplaning or hydroplaning. When this happens, you have little or no control.

Aquaplaning is more prone to happening at higher road speeds if there is a lot of water on the road and particularly if the tires are also under inflated or approaching minimum tread depth.

It is important to take bends or curves at a safe, reasonable speed, particularly when driving on wet or slippery road surfaces.

 The 'beeps' start at approximately 5.5 ft from any obstruction. The 'beep' becomes continuous at distances less than 12 in.

 If reversing into a confined area, i.e. a home garage, the rear parking assist outer sensors will detect the side walls and, after 3 seconds, the 'Beep' sequence will stop. As reversing continues the rear parking assist inner sensors will detect the rear wall or obstruction and the 'beep' sequence will start again.

---

**Slow down when it is raining.**

### **Track Days**

Before using this vehicle on track days contact your Aston Martin Dealer for vehicle set up, service parts and recommendations.

### **Driving Through Deep Water**

**⚠ If in any doubt whether to drive through deep water, always take the side of caution to avoid potentially costly damage to the vehicle's engine or other essential systems.**

If driving on flooded roads, through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed with extreme caution, especially when the depth is not known. Never drive in water deeper than the lower edge of the front bumper. Water can be splashed up into the engine air intakes located in the front upper grille and cause extensive damage to the engine or the vehicle may stall.

When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Once through the water, always dry the brakes by driving slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

 *Waves caused by other vehicles or natural causes can also splash water in the engine air intakes.*

---

### **Running-In**

This vehicle is fully hot tested during manufacture and no special running-in procedures are necessary. Nevertheless it is recommended to limit engine loads (e.g. by accelerating gently and by using lower gears on steep hills or when negotiating tight turns) during the first 1000 mile.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN





# Climate Control

|                           |     |
|---------------------------|-----|
| Operating Tips .....      | 6.2 |
| Climate Controls .....    | 6.2 |
| Airflow Modes .....       | 6.4 |
| Automatic Operation ..... | 6.6 |
| Manual Operation .....    | 6.6 |

## Operating Tips

- A solar sensor is installed on top of the instrument panel, this should not be covered when driving
- The intake grille of the in-vehicle temperature sensor is located in the driver's knee bolster, close to the centre console. To maintain the optimum temperature this grille should not be obstructed
- Moisture which forms on the evaporator in the air conditioning unit is discharged via a drain tube onto the road. After stopping, small puddles of water may form underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not show a system malfunction
- Operate the climate control system with the engine operating
- Clear all obstructions like leaves, snow and ice from the hood and the air inlet in the front grille to improve the system efficiency
- Windows can fog up easily in humid weather. Use the climate control system to demist the windows
- To help demist the windows, operate the air conditioner to dehumidify the air
- Use the 'outside air' position in normal conditions. The 'recirculated air' position should be used temporarily when driving on dusty roads or for quick cooling or heating of the interior

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows to let warm air escape, then close the windows and operate the climate control system
- Operate the climate control system at least once a month to keep internal parts lubricated
- Have the climate control system checked before the weather gets hot. If the climate control system is low on refrigerant or has a malfunction, consult your Aston Martin Dealer
- This vehicle is equipped with a pollen filter. It is necessary to change the filter periodically as shown in the scheduled maintenance. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer

## Climate Controls



[1] **DISPLAY** - Shows options, menus and information.

[2] **MAX**  - Press for maximum defrost or demist ON or OFF. Outside air intake is automatically selected and air conditioning is automatically started.

[3] **TEMPERATURE** - Set the required in vehicle temperature. Turn clockwise for hot and counterclockwise for cold. The selected temperature is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

[4] **AUTO** - Press for automatic climate control operation (Refer to 'Automatic Operation', page 6.6).

[5] **A/C** - When in manual mode press and release to set the air conditioning ON or OFF.

[6] **HEATED REAR WINDOW** - Press to operate the rear window heater. Goes OFF after 20 minutes if not manually set to OFF. When the heated rear window is ON the door mirror heaters will work for 6.5 minutes, then go OFF.

 **Warning:** Do not select recirculated air in cold or rainy weather, it can cause the interior glass to mist up.

[7] **AIR CIRCULATION** - Controls the source of air entering the vehicle. Press to select recirculated air (button LED ON). Press again to select outside air as source.

Use the recirculated air position when going through tunnels, driving in congested traffic (high engine exhaust areas) or when maximum cooling is required. On start up the default position is outside air as source. Use this position for normal conditions and demisting.

[8] **FAN SPEED** - Turn to set the required fan speed (clockwise for fast speed and counterclockwise for low speed). The fan speed is shown on the **DISPLAY**

[9] **AIRFLOW** - Select the required airflow. The selected air flow mode is shown on the **DISPLAY** (Refer to 'Automatic Operation', page 6.6).

## Display Units

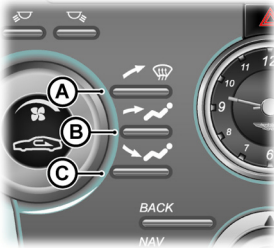
To change the **DISPLAY** units from °C to °F or °F to °C.

Press and hold in buttons 1 and 6 (A). Insert the vehicle key in the ignition control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON), then release the two buttons.



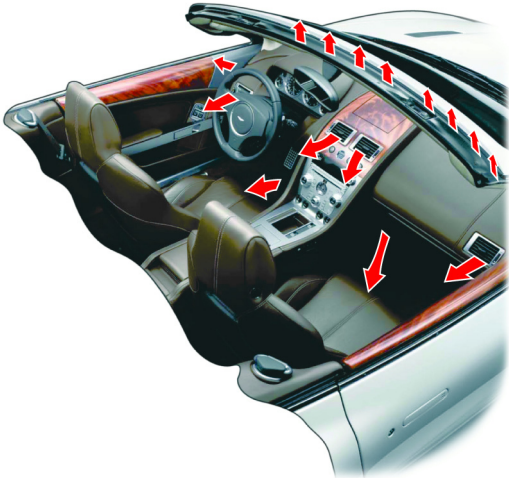
# Airflow Modes

Press and release each button for an airflow mode. By pressing one or more buttons at a time, five airflow modes are available.



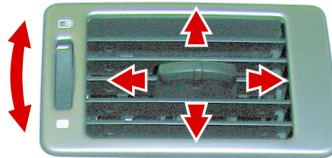
| Mode                                           | Button(s) |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Windshield and Door Windows <sub>1</sub>       | A         |
| Face Only                                      | B         |
| Feet Only <sub>2</sub>                         | C         |
| Windshield, Door Windows and Feet <sub>3</sub> | A+C       |
| Face and Feet                                  | B+C       |

- 1. In addition a small bleed of air is directed into the face vents.
- 2. In addition a small bleed of air is directed to the face vents, the windshield and door windows.
- 3. In addition a small bleed of air is directed into the face vents.



## Adjusting the Vents

To adjust the air flow vents:

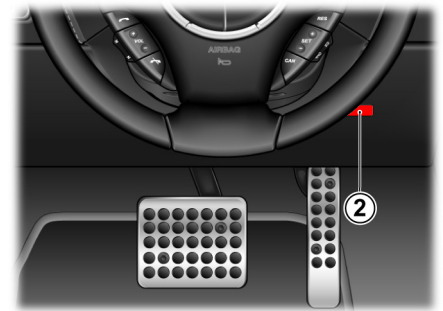
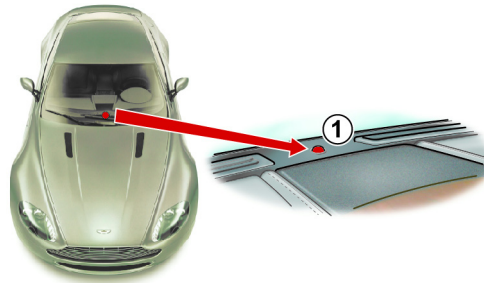


## Solar and Temperature Sensors

The automatic air conditioner function measures inside and outside temperatures, and sunlight. It then sets the interior temperature accordingly. To maintain effective operation do not obscure the following sensors:

[1] - Solar sensor.

[2] - In-vehicle temperature sensor.



## Automatic Operation

Press **AUTO**. Using the **TEMPERATURE** dial set the required in-vehicle temperature (read the actual temperature setting in the top left of the **DISPLAY**). The **A/C** button LED will come ON.

Adjustments to fan speed, air flow and air re circulation will be made automatically according to the set temperature, interior and exterior conditions.

 Maximum fan speed will not be available until the engine has reach its normal operating temperature.

 When using the air conditioner, mist may come out from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.

 If resetting climate control functions other than the fan speed, the fan speed will stay set as in automatic mode. Adjustments to the fan speed will cancel Auto Mode.

## Defrost and Demist

 **To defrost or demist the windshield on vehicle start up in extreme cold weather conditions, run the engine at 1500rpm. Always make sure that neutral (manual transmission) or P (park (SportShift transmission) is selected and the park brake is applied.**

Press **MAX** . The outside air intake is automatically selected, the temperature is set to maximum and A/C is started.

 If the engine is cold the A/C will not start up until the engine has started to warm up.

To cancel Automatic defrost or demist either:

- Press **MAX**  again
- or
- Press **AUTO**
- or
- Press any of the airflow mode buttons

## Manual Operation

Set the required:

- Fan speed
- Temperature
- Air flow

If dehumidifying is required, press the **A/C** button (button LED ON). To stop dehumidifying press **A/C** button (button LED OFF).

 When using the air conditioner, mist may come out from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.

 Setting the temperature to maximum high or low will not provide the required temperature at a faster rate. To prevent cool air blowing from the vents when heating immediately after starting a cold engine, the amount of airflow is reduced until the air warms up.

 The vehicle heater will continue to produce the selected temperature regardless of in-vehicle conditions.

 When maximum cooling is required, set the **TEMPERATURE** dial to the extreme cold position and press the **AIR CIRCULATION** button to the re circulated air position ( will show in the **DISPLAY**), then set a fast fan speed.

## Defrost and Demist

**!** *To defrost or demist the windshield on vehicle start up in extreme cold weather conditions, operate the engine at 1500 rpm. Always make sure that the transmission is in Park and the park brake is applied.*

Press **A/C**. Press the   airflow button.

Set the required:

- Temperature
- Fan speed

 *If the engine is cold the air conditioning will not start up until the engine has started to warm up.*

 *For maximum defrost or demist set the temperature and fan speed dials to maximum.*



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN





# Convertible Roof

|                                         |      |
|-----------------------------------------|------|
| Roof Operation .....                    | 7.2  |
| Conditions for Operating the Roof ..... | 7.2  |
| Door Windows Reset .....                | 7.4  |
| Roof Reset .....                        | 7.4  |
| Manual Raise and Lock .....             | 7.6  |
| Roof Maintenance.....                   | 7.9  |
| Deployable Rollbars .....               | 7.9  |
| Wind Deflector .....                    | 7.10 |

## Roof Operation

**⚠ Warning:** Before raising or lowering the roof, make sure that all occupants are clear of the roof linkage, the windshield frame and door windows.

**⚠ Warning:** Misuse of the roof switch, especially by children, can result in injury due to entrapment in the roof mechanism and locking points.

**! Aston Martin recommend that the roof is not operated at temperatures of 32°F and below.**

**! Make sure that the roof is always fully raised or fully lowered.**

**! Avoid repetitive use of the roof; this may cause the roof pump to over heat. If the pump over heats roof movement will be inhibited until the pump has cooled.**

**! Do not attempt to lower the roof if any objects or clothing are laying on top of the roof.**

**! Continuous use of the roof without the engine operating will cause the vehicle battery to rapidly discharge.**

**! Do not store objects or items in the roof storage area. Any objects or items stored there may cause damage to the roof when attempting to lower it. Even small objects can cause damage.**

## Conditions for Operating the Roof

**⚠ Warning:** Keep the vehicle road speed down to a minimum until the roof has completed its operation.

**! Aston Martin recommend that the roof is only operated while the vehicle is stationary.**

- The trunk lid must be closed
- The ignition must be ON (engine running or not)
- Headroom (A (73.42 in)) is available for the roof to raise or lower
- Outside temperature must be above -14°F

**📖** The trunk lid will lock and will stay locked during roof lowering and raising operations.



If the vehicle is moving while the roof is being raised or lowered, roof movement will continue, while the roof switch is pressed, until the roof has locked in the raised or lowered position. While operating the roof the following warnings will show, depending on the vehicle speed:

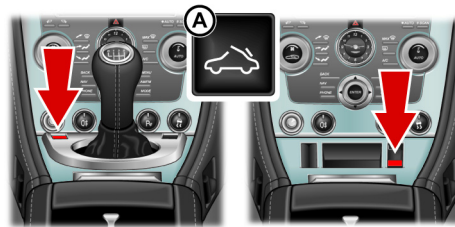
**2.5 to 30 mph** - STOP SAFELY FOR ROOF OPERATION will show in the message centre (right).

**30 to 40 mph** - STOP SAFELY FOR ROOF OPERATION will show in the message centre (right), the amber warning triangle will show and a single audible warning will sound. Roof movement will continue.

**Over 40 mph** - ROOF FAILURE POSSIBLE will show in the message centre (right), the amber warning triangle will show and a continuous audible warning will sound. Roof movement will continue.

It is not possible to start roof operation at speeds of 30 mph or above. NO ROOF OPERATION POSSIBLE will show in the message centre (right), the amber warning triangle will show and a single audible warning will sound. While operating the roof, if the roof switch is released when travelling at 30 mph or more, no roof movement will be available until the vehicle speed drops below 30 mph.

The roof operation switch (A) is located on the centre console. If at any time during the lowering or raising procedure the switch is released – the roof will stop immediately. ROOF MOVEMENT PAUSED will show in the message centre (right) and an audible warning will sound until the roof continues to raise or lower.



If at any time during the lowering or raising procedure the switch is released – roof movement will stop immediately. ROOF MOVEMENT PAUSED will show in the message centre (right) and a continuous audible warning will sound until the roof continues to lower or raise.

**! As soon as it is safe to do so continue the roof movement. If the roof is left in pause for ten minutes, hydraulic pressure will be lost. The roof and tonneau lid will relax and, gently, fall back. Powered roof operation will be stopped until the roof has been manually fully raised or lowered.**

### Lowering the Roof

**! Warning: Roof movement has not finished and locked until ROOF MOVEMENT COMPLETE shows in the message centre (right).**

Pull the roof switch rearwards and hold until ROOF MOVEMENT COMPLETE shows in the message centre (right).



## Raising the Roof

**⚠ Warning:** *Roof movement has not finished and locked until ROOF MOVEMENT COMPLETE shows in the message centre (right).*

Push the roof switch forwards and hold until ROOF MOVEMENT COMPLETE shows in the message centre (right) and a single audible warning sounds. If the door windows are required to be closed continue to press the switch after ROOF MOVEMENT COMPLETE shows until the door windows have closed.



## Door Windows Reset

In the unlikely event of the roof failing while in the fully raised or lowered position, check for correct operation of the vehicle door windows.

To check the door windows operation use the door window reset procedure (Refer to 'Door Window Reset', page 11.38). Once correct operation of the windows is confirmed, check roof operation again. If the roof will not work then manually raise and lock the roof (if required) and contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

## Roof Reset

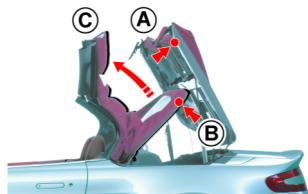
**⚠ Warning:** *Aston Martin recommend that a minimum of two people are required to manually lower the roof. The roof mechanism is heavy and will move very slowly when being moved manually.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Keep fingers clear of the roof linkage when moving the roof manually.*

If the roof stalls or is left in 'Pause' for ten minutes or more, hydraulic pressure will be lost. The roof and Tonneau lid will relax and, gently, fall back. Powered roof operation will be stopped until the roof has been reset by manually fully raising or lowering the roof.

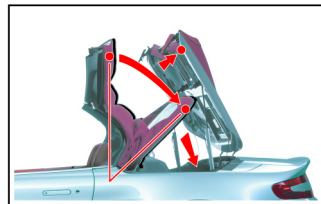
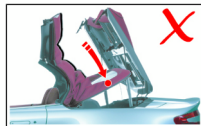
It is recommended to fully lower the roof to reset.

1. Remove the vehicle key from the Ignition control.
2. With a person each side, support the tonneau lid (A) in the raised position. While supporting the lid raise the tension bow (B) towards the header of the roof (C). When the tension bow has reached its mechanical stop bring the header of the roof down towards the tension bow.



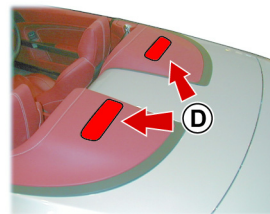
**!** Make sure that the tension bow and header lower together. It is possible to damage the roof if the tension bow is allowed to lower without the header.

- Continue to support the tonneau lid and lower the tension bow and the header together into the roof storage area. Once the tension bow and the header are stored let the tonneau lid lower.



- In the areas shown (D), push the tonneau lid down and engage both tonneau lid catches, one each side.

Once the catches have engaged the roof will reset and ROOF MOVEMENT COMPLETE will show in the message centre (right). Operate the roof using the roof switch.



If the roof does not work contact your Aston Martin Dealer. If the vehicle is to be left unattended or in case of inclement weather, it is recommended that the roof be raised and locked.

 Raising and locking the roof may reset the roof. If ROOF MOVEMENT COMPLETE shows in the message centre (right) use the roof switch to operate the roof.

## Manual Raise and Lock

In the unlikely event of the roof failing during raising or lowering, it can be manually raised and locked, if required.

**⚠ Warning: Aston Martin recommend that a minimum of two people are required to manually raise and lock the roof. The roof mechanism is heavy and will move very slowly when being raised manually.**

**⚠ Warning: Keep fingers clear of the roof linkage when moving the roof manually.**

**⚠ Vehicle Security: If the roof fails always raise and lock the roof. Do not lower the roof. Tonneau lid locks will not be available.**

📖 If the roof fails in the stored position it can stay stored and locked if required. Contact your Aston Martin dealer.

📖 If the roof fails after the tonneau locks have been released the message ROOF FAIL will show in the message centre (right) and a continuous audible warning will sound until the roof has been locked in the raised position.

If installed, remove and store the wind deflector (Refer to 'Wind Deflector', page 7.10).

Remove the allen key from the vehicle tool kit (A) and place in the vehicle cabin.

📖 The allen key is required to lock the roof in position.

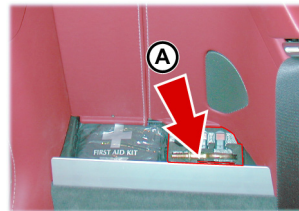
Remove the vehicle key and wait for a minimum of five seconds.

📖 During this time the roof hydraulics will relax allowing manual movement of the roof. Some hydraulic fluid resistance will still be in the operating rams. It may take considerable effort to fully raise the roof manually.

1. If installed, remove and store the wind deflector (Refer to 'Wind Deflector', page 6.11).
2. Remove the allen key from the vehicle tool kit (A) and place in the vehicle cabin.

📖 The allen key is required to lock the roof in position.

3. Remove the vehicle key and wait for a minimum of five seconds.



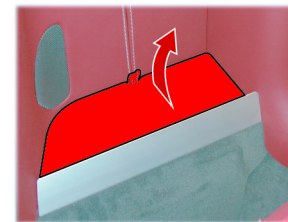
📖 During this time the roof hydraulics will relax allowing manual movement of the roof. Some hydraulic fluid resistance will still be in the operating rams. It may take considerable effort to fully raise the roof manually.

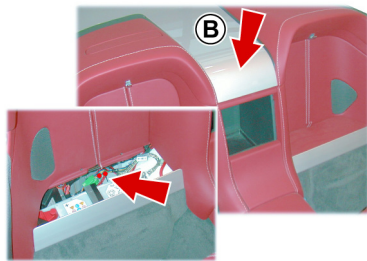
4. If the tonneau lid is locked or unlocked but still on its secondary catches.

📖 If required power the drivers seat forward.

5. Remove the vehicle battery cover. Remove the foam insert and locate the two tonneau lid manual release cables. Pull the tonneau lid manual release cables, releasing the tonneau lid.

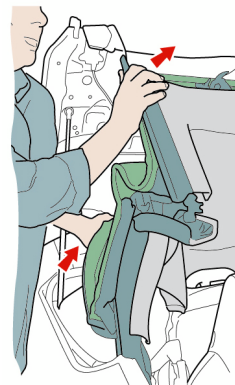
📖 While pulling the manual release cables, apply slight downward pressure in the middle of the tonneau lid at point B.





6. With a person each side, manually lift the tonneau lid to its fullest extent.

7. With a person each side, support the tonneau lid in the fully raised position, while raising the roof. Place one hand under the roof lining and the other hand under the roof tension bow (positions shown) - lift, both sides, until the tension bow clears the tonneau lid.

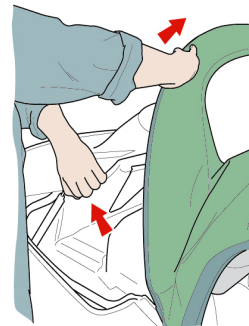


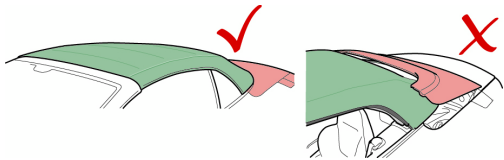
8. When the rear tension bow has cleared the tonneau lid, let the tonneau lid lower.

*Hold the roof in position while the tonneau lid lowers.*

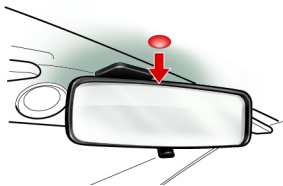
*It will not be possible to lock the tonneau lid in its lowered position. The raised roof with the tension bow laying on the tonneau lid will be sufficient to secure the tonneau lid when driving.*

***Do not allow the tonneau lid to rest on the roof fabric.***



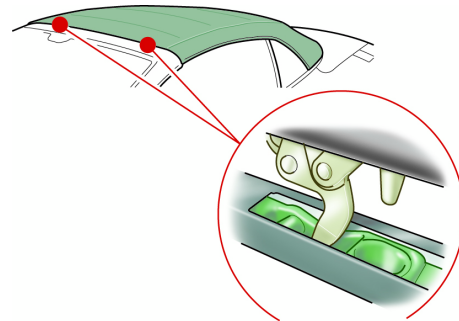
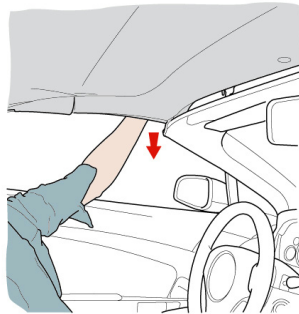


9. Lower the tension bow onto the tonneau lid. At the same time the front of the roof will lower to the top of the windshield.
10. From inside the vehicle cabin, remove the trim plug.



11. With a person in each seat reach out and pull the roof down (position shown) to make sure that the two lock arms are located in their catches.

**⚠ Warning: Make sure that fingers and hands are not between the roof and the top of the windshield while locking the roof in position.**



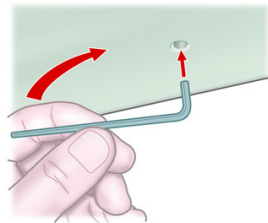
12. While the roof is being held down with the two lock arms located in their catches, use the allen key, from the vehicle tool kit, to lock the roof in position.

 Many turns of the allen key will be required to lock the roof.



13. Continue to turn the allen key until no more movement is possible.

**!** *Do not use power tools. The roof manual lock and unlock mechanism may be damaged if power tools, i.e. an electric drill, are used to lock or unlock the roof.*



## Roof Maintenance

**!** *Do not use automatic vehicle washes. Brushes, detergents and pressurised water jets may damage the roof fabric.*

**!** *Do not use power washers. Jets of water may damage the weather seals and the roof fabric.*

**!** *Do not use spot cleaners, chemical diluents or any organic cleaners. If in doubt, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.*

If the roof is left for prolonged periods in the lowered position (folded), in certain circumstances (a wet or dirty roof) permanent soiling along folds may occur in the roof fabric. Do not leave the roof in the lowered (folded) position for longer than necessary.

### Roof Fabric Maintenance

(Refer to 'Convertible Roof Fabric', page 11.37)

## Deployable Rollbars

**!** *Warning: Do not attempt to service or modify the deployable rollbar system.*

**!** *Warning: Do not allow any person to sit on the deployable rollbar covers at any time.*

**!** *Warning: Do not place any objects on the top of the deployable rollbar covers.*

**!** *Warning: Do not attempt to reset the deployable rollbar system after it has deployed.*

**!** *Warning: Do not attempt to raise or lower the roof after the deployable rollbar system has deployed.*

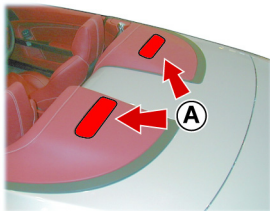
**!** *If the roof is raised the deployable rollbars will break through the rear glass.*

**!** *Extreme manoeuvres may cause the system to predict a roll over and deploy the rollbars for protection of the occupants. If such driving events are anticipated by the customer (e.g. Track day driving) the roof should be fully lowered to let the rollbars to deploy without damaging the vehicle.*

 The deployable rollbar system and the airbag system react independently. The deployable rollbars and the airbags may deploy together or alone, depending on the type of impact.

This vehicle is equipped with a deployable rollbar system, which is in addition to and independent of the airbag system.

The deployable rollbar system comprises an electronic roll sensor unit mounted to the body and two 'U' shaped roll bars, concealed by trim panels in the tonneau lid (A), which will deploy in the unlikely event of the vehicle rolling over. The electronic roll sensor constantly monitors the vehicle attitude.



On sensing an impending roll over situation the electronic roll sensor sends a signal to the deployable rollbars, triggering a release.

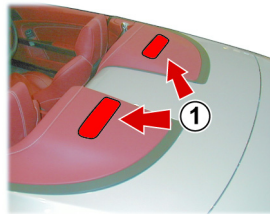
The deployable rollbars then extend upward and lock into place.

If the deployable rollbar system has been deployed, contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.

## Warning Labels

The following warning is located on the deployable rollbar system:

**[1]** - 'Do Not Cover'.



## Wind Deflector

(Option)

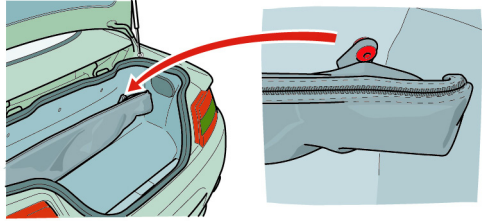
A wind deflector can be installed to enhance comfort when driving with the roof lowered:

- Wind turbulence is greatly reduced
- It easily installs to existing mounts within your vehicle
- The wind deflector can be left in place with the roof raised or lowered
- Easily folded and stowed away when not used

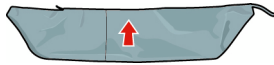
**⚠ Take care when adjusting the driver or passenger seat position with the wind deflector installed. Make sure that the seats do not come into contact the wind deflector.**

## Storage

When the wind deflector is not required, remove it from the vehicle and place it in its storage bag. The bag is secured to the back wall of the trunk at four location points.

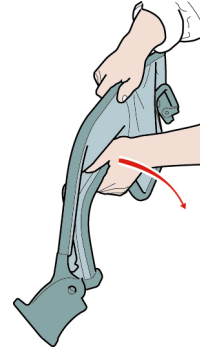


 The bag installs as shown with the four tabs towards the trunk wall.

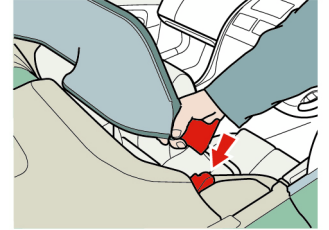


## Install and Remove

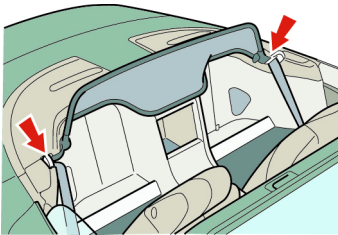
Remove the wind deflector from its storage bag, located in the trunk and unfold.



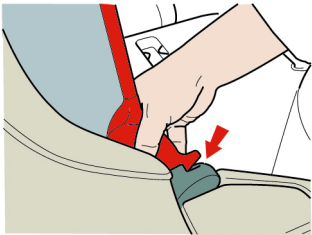
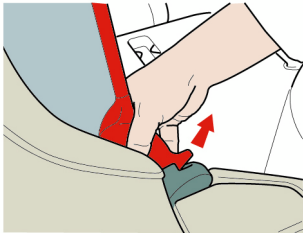
Locate the two tabs on the wind deflector in to the slots provided in the top seat belt mounts.



Push down at the points shown. Make sure that the mounts fully clip into place and are secure.



To remove the wind deflector pull up at the points shown to un-clip the two tabs from the top seat belt mounts. Remove the wind deflector from the vehicle, fold it flat, put it in its storage bag and place the bag in its storage area the vehicle trunk.



ASTON MARTIN



# Audio

|                                   |      |
|-----------------------------------|------|
| Audio Essentials .....            | 8.2  |
| Audio Controls.....               | 8.4  |
| Radio Functions .....             | 8.9  |
| Programme Type .....              | 8.10 |
| Automatic Frequency Updating..... | 8.10 |
| Satellite Radio Functions .....   | 8.11 |
| CD Changer Functions .....        | 8.13 |
| iPod and USB Functions.....       | 8.14 |
| Auxiliary Functions.....          | 8.16 |
| Audio Menus .....                 | 8.16 |

## Audio Essentials

### Standard Audio

**Radio** - AM and FM radio. 10 AM and 20 FM presets are available.

**CD** - Six CD autochanger.

**iPod<sub>1</sub>** - Connection port.

**USB Device** - Connection port.

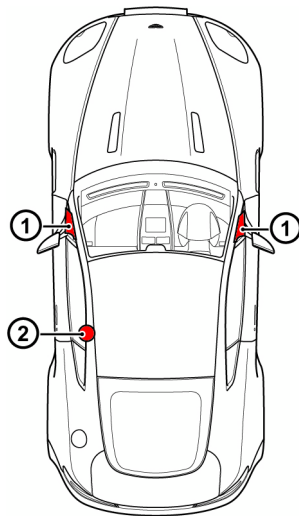
**Auxiliary Input** - Connection port.

**Power Output** - 160W.

### Speakers

**[1]** - Two door-mounted 40W speakers, each with mid-range and tweeter units.

**[2]** - One 80W subwoofer housed under the rear environment left side.



### Aston Martin Audio

(Option)

**Radio** - AM and FM radio. 10 AM and 20 FM presets are available.

**CD** - Six CD autochanger.

**iPod<sub>2</sub>** - Connection port.

**USB Device** - Connection port.

**Auxiliary Input** - Connection port.

**Power Output** - 700W.

**Surround Sound** - Dolby Pro-Logic II.

### Speakers

**[1]** - 100W centre-fill speaker.

**[2]** - Two door-mounted 100W speakers, each with mid-range and tweeter units.

**[3]** - Two rear environment 100W speakers, each with mid-range and tweeter units.

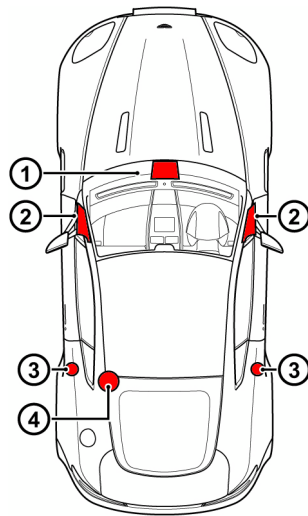
**[4]** - 200W subwoofer housed under the rear environment left side.

---

<sup>1</sup>. iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.

---

<sup>2</sup>. iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.



## Bang & Olufsen Audio

(Option)

**Radio** - AM and FM radio. 10 AM and 20 FM presets are available.

**Satellite Radio** - Option

**CD** - Six CD autochanger.

**iPod<sub>1</sub>** - Connection port.

**USB Device** - Connection port.1

**Auxiliary Input** - Connection port.

**Power Output** - 974W

## Speakers

**[1]** - Two 0.75 in (soft dome) tweeters incorporating Acoustic Lens Technology (ALT).

**[2]** - Centre: Two speakers: One 4 in mid-range in closed cabinet and one 0.75 in (soft dome) tweeter.

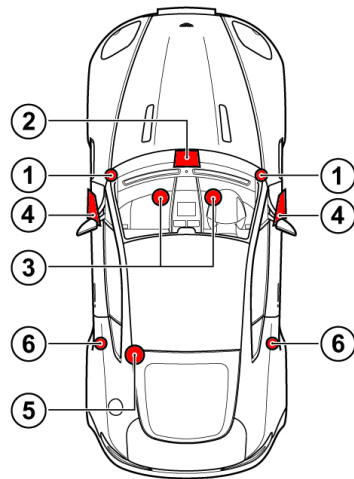
**[3]** - Footwell: Two 6 in woofers in closed cabinets.

**[4]** - One 4 in mid-range speaker, in closed cabinets, in each front door.

**[5]** - One 8 in subwoofer housed in closed cabinet under the rear environment left seat.

**[6]** - Two speakers: One 3.5 in mid-range and one 0.75 in (soft dome) tweeter in each rear quarter.

<sup>1</sup>. iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.



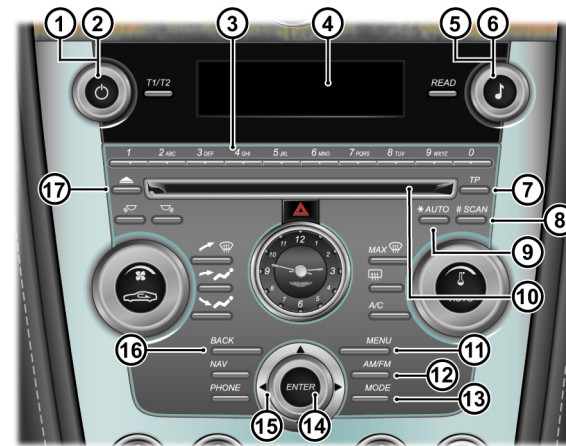
### Acoustic Lens Technology

Acoustic Lens Technology (ALT) gives a wide (180°) horizontal dispersion of high frequencies. This prevents the loss of critical sound and gives listeners an improved sense of space, staging and realism, even when not sitting in the optimal location<sup>1</sup> for listening to two-channel stereo reproductions.



Two motorized acoustic lenses, mounted on either side of the dashboard, rise when the system is set to ON and stay raised until the audio system is set to OFF.

### Audio Controls



<sup>1</sup> For the optimal location to listen to two-channel stereo reproductions, the listener should be sitting equidistant from both loudspeakers on the apex of an equilateral triangle.



[1] **ON/OFF** - Press for audio ON and OFF.

[2] **VOLUME** - Volume control.

[3] **KEYPAD** - Use the numbers as menu short cuts. Press the number corresponding to the menu number.

[4] **DISPLAY** - Shows options, menus and information.

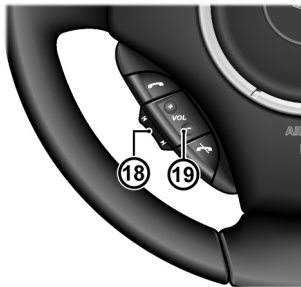
[5] **SOUND** - Press and hold to enter sound setting mode. Press repeatedly to move through settings, turn to select. When in iPod or USB mode a press and release will enable file viewing.

[6] **TUNING** - Turn to manually search stations, change music tracks or navigate in the menus.

[7] **TP** - Not used.

[8] **SCAN** -

- **Radio:** Find and store the strongest stations.
- **Satellite Radio:** Automatic station search.



- **CD's, iPod / USB:** 10 seconds of each track is played. Press once again to select a track.

[9] **AUTO** -

- **Radio:** Automatic station search.
- **Satellite Radio:** Select radio text.

[10] **CD OPENING** - Insert CD's

[11] **MENU** - Opens the main menu.

[12] **AM/FM** - Press to select radio as audio source.

[13] **MODE** - Press repeatedly to select audio source.

[14] **ENTER** - Select in the menu, open a selection or open a file.

[15] **JOYSTICK** - Navigate in the menus.

- **Radio:** Press left or right to auto search the next station. Press and hold left or right to manually select a station. Press up or down to navigate in the menus or preset stations.
- **Satellite Radio:** Press left or right to auto search the next station. Press up or down to navigate in the menus or preset stations.

- **CD's:** Press left or right to move to the next or previous track. Press left or right and hold to search within a track or the whole CD. The search continues as long as the Joystick is pressed.

- **iPod / USB:** Press left or right to move to the next track or previous. Press left or right and hold to search within a track or the whole music folder. The search continues as long as the Joystick is pressed.

[16] **BACK** - Press to move back one action. Press and hold to move back to the default screen.

[17] **CD EJECT** -

[18] **SCROLL** -

- **Radio:** Navigate through the preset radio stations.
- **Satellite Radio:** Navigate the channel list.
- **CD's, iPod / USB:** Navigate through the music tracks.

[19] **VOLUME** - Volume control.

## Operation

The audio system is available with the vehicle key at least in position 'I' and is available until the vehicle key is removed from the ignition control.

If the audio system is ON when the ignition is set to OFF and the vehicle key removed, it will automatically start the next time the vehicle key is moved to position 'I'.

Press **ON/OFF** to set the audio system ON or OFF.

 When the audio system is set to ON the volume will be at the same level it was when the audio system was set to OFF.

The **JOYSTICK**, **ENTER** and **BACK** will not operate if Satellite Navigation is selected (**NAV** button LED ON) either press:

- The **NAV** button to deselect satellite navigation (**NAV** button LED OFF)
- Or press any audio button other than **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK**

to access controls for audio.

 Pressing the **AM/FM** or **MODE** buttons will move the current audio source.

## Sound Source

To select radio, at any time while the audio system is ON, press the **AM/FM** button repeatedly to navigate between the radio bands.

To select other audio sound sources press the **MODE** button repeatedly to navigate through the sound source choices.

## Battery Protection Mode

Using the audio system, with the vehicle key at position 'I' (ignition OFF) will drain the battery charge. A warning message will show in the message centre (right) when the battery charge is low (Refer to 'Battery Protection Mode', page 11.26).

## Menus

The audio menu is only available when the audio system is in use. Press **MENU** to access the main menu. The menu for the current audio source (i.e. radio, CD, iPod, etc.) will be available.

## Search Path

Menu paths are shown for each operation in the following format:  
<FM Menu...> Enter <Sound settings...> Enter.

Several menu options will require a cross in a box  to select an option. Once the menu item is highlighted press **ENTER** to either check or uncheck the box. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.

 In this chapter when asked to 'Press' a button, this means 'Press and release'. When this is not the case it will be clear in the text.

## Active Sound Control

This vehicle has a speed-dependent volume feature known as Active Sound Control (ASC). This adjusts the volume automatically depending on the speed of the vehicle.

Press **MENU** and navigate to sound source menu, press **ENTER**. Select <Auto. volume control> Enter <Off>, <Low>, <Optimum> or <High> Enter.

## Original Settings

### Radio Functions

Resets all radio settings to the original factory settings: Press **MENU** and navigate to <FM Menu...> Enter <Advanced radio settings...> Enter <Reset all...> Enter. Press **ENTER** again to confirm.

### Sound Settings

Resets all sound settings to the original factory settings: Press **MENU** and navigate to sound source menu, press **ENTER**. Select <Audio settings...> Enter <Reset all...> Enter. Press **ENTER** again to confirm.

## Aston Martin Audio Sound Settings

To access sound settings press and hold **SOUND** to enter sound setting mode. Then press repeatedly until the required sound setting is shown on the **DISPLAY**. Turn the **TUNING** dial to the desired setting.



*The level for the centre speaker can only be set if either Dolby Pro-Logic II or 3 Channel has been selected from the sound source menu.*

**Bass** - Level for bass

**Treble** - Level for treble

**Fader** - Balance between the front and rear speakers

**Balance** - Balance between the left and right speakers

**Surround** - Level for surround sound

**Subwoofer** - Level for subwoofer

**Centre** - Level for centre speaker

**Surround** - Level for surround sound

## Setting the Surround Sound

Press **MENU** and navigate to the sound source menu, press **ENTER**. Select <Audio Settings...> Enter <Surround (AM, FM, CD iPod or AUX)...> Enter <Dolby Pro-Logic II>, <3 Channel> or <Off> Enter. Press and hold **BACK** to return to the main display. The symbol for Dolby Pro-Logic II is shown on the **DISPLAY** if Dolby Pro-Logic II is selected. '3CH' is shown on the **DISPLAY** if 3 Channel is selected. 'Off' means the system is in normal stereo mode. Dolby Pro-Logic II is not available in radio mode.

### Equalizer

Fine adjustment of the sound from the speakers: Press **MENU** and navigate to the sound source menu, press **ENTER**. Select <Audio Settings...> Enter <Equalizer...> Enter. Move the **JOYSTICK** left or right to set the level. Use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down) to select the next frequency. Five frequencies can be adjusted. Press **ENTER** to save any changes and exit. Press **BACK** to exit without saving any changes.

## Dolby Surround Pro-Logic II

Dolby Surround Pro-Logic II, with its centre speaker in the dashboard, provides more realistic sound reproduction.

The normal left and right stereo channels are divided into left-centre-right. In addition, ambient surround sound is produced through the rear speaker channels.

Not available in Radio mode.

 *Dolby Surround Pro-Logic II and the Dolby icon are trade-marks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. The Dolby Pro-Logic II Surround System is manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.*



## Bang & Olufsen Audio Sound Settings

To access sound settings press and hold **SOUND** to enter sound setting mode. Then press repeatedly until the required sound setting is shown on the **DISPLAY**. Turn the **TUNING** dial to the desired setting.

### Sound Focus

The focus of the sound from the audio system can be optimised for either the driver or the driver and front passenger. Select:

 *The audio system detects seat occupancy by seat belt engagement.*

**Driver** - The focus of the sound is optimised for the driver only.

**Front** - The focus of the sound is optimised for both the driver and the front passenger.

**Auto** - The audio system automatically detects if driver only or driver and front passenger are in the vehicle.

### Other Sound Settings

**Bass** - Level for bass

**Treble** - Level for treble

**Fader** - Balance between the front and rear speakers

**Balance** - Balance between the left and right speakers

**Surround** - Level for surround sound

## Radio Functions

### Automatic Tuning

Select FM1, FM2 or AM using the **AM/FM** button. Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) to search for the next strong station.

Press left or right again to start a new search.

 *If no stations are found press either button again to cancel.*

### Manual Tuning

There are two ways to tune into a station manually.

- Turn the **TUNING** dial to set the desired frequency.
- Press and hold the **JOYSTICK** (left or right).

The frequency rolls slowly in the selected direction and increases speed after a few seconds.

Release the button when the desired frequency shows on the **DISPLAY**. If the frequency needs adjusting, briefly touch one of the arrows.

### Storing Stations

10 stations can be stored for FM1, FM2 or AM (a total of 30 stations).

To store stations:

Tune to the desired station. Press and hold the **KEYPAD** button (0-9) where the station is to be stored. The sound will be muted for a couple of seconds and 'Station Stored' will show on the **DISPLAY**.

Select a stored station by either pressing a **KEYPAD** (0 to 9) button or use the **SCROLL** button to scroll through the station list.

### Autostoring Stations

Up to ten AM or FM stations can be automatically tuned and stored in a separate memory.

Select FM1, FM2 or AM using the **AM/FM** button. Start the search by pressing and holding **AUTO** (more than two seconds).

'Autostoring.' shows on the **DISPLAY** and a number of strong stations (maximum ten) from the selected frequency band are stored in the autostore memory. If there are no stations that are sufficiently strong, 'No AST Found' shows on the **DISPLAY**.

 *If more than ten stations are found, the ten strongest are selected. This function is particularly useful if you are in an area in which you are unfamiliar with the radio stations and their frequencies.*

The stations are stored on the **KEYPAD** (buttons 0-9). When the radio is in autostore mode, 'Autostoring' is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

Return to the ordinary radio mode by pressing and releasing **AUTO** (less than 0.7 seconds). Pressing and releasing either **AUTO** or **BACK** will also cancel autostoring.

Select an Auto stored station by pressing **AUTO**, then a **KEYPAD** (0 to 9) button or the **SCROLL** button to scroll through the station list.

### Automatic Search for Transmitter

'PI seek' shows on the **DISPLAY** when reception is poor for the selected station. The radio automatically searches for the strongest transmission for that station. 'PI seek Back to cancel' is shown on the **DISPLAY** until the station is found.

### Scanning

Scanning automatically searches for the next strong FM or AM station signals. When the radio finds a station, scanning pauses for approximately eight seconds, after which it continues.

Select FM or AM with the **AM/FM** button.

Press **SCAN**. 'Scan' shows on the **DISPLAY** and each found station will play for approximately eight seconds. Press **SCAN** or **BACK** to accept the station.

 *If no stations are found press either button again to cancel.*

## Programme Type

Use the Programme Type (PTY) function to select between the various programme types.

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <FM Menu...> Enter <PTY...> Enter <Show PTY> Enter.

When ON the station's programme type will be shown on the **DISPLAY**, e.g. Current affairs, Information, Drama, Rock music, etc.

 Not all radio stations have a PTY designation.

### Searching for a Specific PTY

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <FM Menu...> Enter <PTY...> Enter <PTY...>. Press **ENTER** for one or more of the listed programme types.

The PTY symbol on the **DISPLAY** comes ON when the first selection is made and the radio is set to stand-by for PTY.

Press **BACK** to go back.

Navigate to <FM Menu...> Enter <PTY...> Enter <Search PTY> Enter.

If the radio finds a station with the selected programme type, this is played.

If a station with the selected programme type can not be found, the **DISPLAY** shows 'No Station Found' and the radio returns to the previous frequency.

PTY is then on stand-by until the selected programme type is broadcast. When this happens, the radio automatically selects the station broadcasting the programme type.

### Clear All PTY

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <FM Menu...> Enter <PTY...> Enter <Clear all PTY...> Enter.

The PTY symbol is removed from the **DISPLAY** and the radio returns to normal mode.

## Automatic Frequency Updating

The Automatic Frequency (AF) Updating function is normally ON and makes sure that the radio tunes to the strongest available transmitter.

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <FM Menu...> Enter <Advanced radio settings...> Enter <AF> Enter.

When ON 'AF' is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

## Satellite Radio Functions

### SIRIUS ID

The SIRIUS ID is required when contacting the SIRIUS Call Centre. It is used to start your account and when making any account transactions. The SIRIUS ID is sometimes referred to as the Electronic Serial Number (ESN).

To access the 12 digit SIRIUS ID: Press **MENU**. Navigate to <Sirius menu...> Enter <Advanced sirius settings...> Enter <Sirius ID> Enter.

### Selecting Satellite Radio Mode

Press **ON/OFF** to set the audio system ON. Press **MODE** repeatedly to select SAT 1 or 2.

### Activating Satellite Radio

Tune to a satellite channel that has no audio, which means that the channel is unsubscribed and the text 'Call \*\*\*-\*\*\*-SIRIUS to Subscribe' is shown.

Call SIRIUS:

**North America:** 1-888-539-SIRIUS (7474).

**Canada:** 1-866-635-9632

When asked for the SIRIUS ID number press **AUTO** to display this number.

'Updating Subscription' will be shown while the subscription is being updated, after which the **DISPLAY** will return to the normal view.

### Channels

#### Selecting a Channel Category

With audio ON, press the **MODE** button repeatedly to select SAT 1 or 2. Press **ENTER** to access the song category menu.

Using the **JOYSTICK** navigate through the list of categories and press **ENTER** to select a category. Move left or right to select a channel. Audio starts after a few seconds.

 The category 'All' is default, which lets you to navigate through the entire list of available satellite channels.

 Channel categories are automatically updated several times a year. This takes approximately two minutes and will interrupt normal broadcasting. A message will be shown while updating is in progress. Information on channel or feature updates is available at [www.sirius.com](http://www.sirius.com).

### Selecting a Channel

There are three ways of tuning in a channel:

- Press and hold the **JOYSTICK** (up or down) or the **SCROLL** button. The scrolling function begins slowly and increases speed after approximately 5 seconds. Release to listen to the currently tuned channel
- Turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate through the available channels
- Through direct channel entry

#### Direct Channel Entry

The SIRIUS satellite channels are numbered consecutively throughout all of the categories.

To access a channel directly:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> Enter <Direct channel entry> Enter.

Use the **KEYPAD** to enter the channel's number. Press **ENTER**. The radio will tune to this channel, even if it belongs to a category other than the currently selected one.

The numbers of skipped or locked channels will not be shown. If a channel is locked, the access code must be entered before the channel can be selected.

## Scanning

Press **SCAN** to automatically search through the list of satellite channels.

## Storing a Channel

A total of 20 satellite channels can be stored; 10 channels each for SAT 1 and 2. A long press on one of the **KEYPAD** numbers stores the currently tuned channel on that key. Pressing on a **KEYPAD** number while the radio is in SAT 1 or 2 mode will tune to the preset satellite channel stored on that button, regardless of the currently selected channel category.

## Song Seek and Song Memory

The song seek and song memory functions provide both audio and visual notification when SIRIUS is broadcasting your favorite songs. Song seek lets you to store the name of the song for future advance notification when that song is being played. The song memory feature makes it possible to view all of the current songs that are stored in memory.

## Song Memory

Up to ten songs can be saved in the system's memory. When the song is playing press **MENU** and navigate to *<Sirius menu...> Enter <Add song to song mem> Enter*. If a new song is selected when the memory is full, a prompt to erase the last song on the list will show. Press **ENTER** to erase the last song on the list. The remaining songs in the list will move down one position, and the newly added song will be placed at the top of the list.

## View Song Memory List

Press **MENU**. Navigate to *<Sirius menu...> Enter <Advanced sirius settings...> Enter <Song memory> Enter*. Scroll through the song list using the **JOYSTICK**<sub>1</sub>. Press the **TUNING** dial twice to erase the song if required.

## Song Seek

When a satellite radio channel plays one of the songs stored in the song memory, the listener will be alerted by a text message and an audible signal. Press **ENTER** to listen to the song or **EXIT** to cancel. To set the song seek function ON or OFF:

---

<sub>1</sub>. The **TUNING** dial can also be used.

Press **MENU**. Navigate to *<Sirius menu...> Enter <Song seek> Enter*. When the song has ended, the radio will stay tuned to the channel on which the song was played.

## Radio Text

The type of text information shown about the song currently playing can be changed. Use the **AUTO** button or the menu to show the artist, title, composer, or set radio text to OFF.

## Skip Options

This function is used to remove a channel from the list of available channels.

## Skip Current Channel

Press **MENU** > Navigate to *<Sirius menu...> Enter <Advanced sirius settings...> Enter <Skip options> Enter <Channel Skip List> Enter*. Select a category in the list and press **ENTER**. Skip channels in the list by pressing **ENTER**.

## Unskip all Channels

This permanently removes all channels from the skip list and makes them available for selection. Press **MENU**. Navigate to *<Sirius menu...> Enter <Advanced sirius settings...> Enter <Skip options> Enter <Channel Unskip all channels> Enter*.



## CD Changer Functions

### Temporally Unskip all Channels

This function will temporarily unskip all channels and make them available for selection. The channels stay on the skip list and will again be skipped the next time the ignition is set to ON. Press **MENU**. Navigate to <Sirius menu...> Enter <Advanced sirius settings...> Enter <Skip options> Enter <Temporally Unskip all Ch.> Enter.

### Change Code

This function makes it possible to change the channel access code. The default code is 0000. To change the code:

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <Sirius menu...> Enter <Advanced sirius settings...> Enter <Lock options> Enter <Change Code> Enter. Enter the current code and press **ENTER**. Enter the new code and press **ENTER**. Confirm the new code and press **ENTER**. If an incorrect code is entered, the INCORRECT CODE! is shown in the **DISPLAY**.

### View Access Code

If the access code has been forgotten:

Press **MENU**> Navigate to <Sirius menu...> Enter <Advanced sirius settings...> Enter <Sirius ID> Enter. Press and hold **ENTER** for two seconds. The current code will be shown.

### Loading CDs

 **Use only 4.5 in. CDs. Do not use CDs with adhesive disc labels. The heat from the CD player can cause the label to come loose from the disc. The CD player could be damaged.**

 **Do not use CDs that are warped or look warped (critical measurement for CD warp is 0.03 in - anything more than this may cause problems). The CD player will not be able to hold the CD correctly (because of the warp), this may cause a jam in the CD player.**

 If the quality of the CD does not comply with the requirements of standard EN60908 or if it has been recorded using poor equipment, sound quality may be poor or playback interrupted.

The CD changer can hold up to six discs.

Press the **MODE** button repeatedly to select CD. Select an empty position using the **KEYPAD** (buttons 1 to 6) or use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down). The **DISPLAY** shows which positions are empty. Make sure that 'Insert disc' is shown then insert a new disc.

### Selecting a CD

Select the CD to play using **KEYPAD** buttons 1-6 or the **JOYSTICK** (up or down). The number of the disc and track are shown on the **DISPLAY**.

### Changing Tracks

Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right), the **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to play the next or previous track. The track number is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

### Fast Forward and Rewind

Press and hold the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) to search forwards or backwards within a track or the whole disc. Searching continues for as long as the button is depressed.

### Random Play

Plays tracks from a CD or CDs in random order.

Press **MENU**> Navigate to <CD Menu...> Enter <Random...> Enter. Select <Off>, <Single disc> or <All discs> Enter for the player to randomly choose from none, one or all CDs.

‘RND’ or ‘RND ALL’ is shown on the **DISPLAY** while the function is ON. Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) or **SCROLL** button to select the next or previous random track.

Press **BACK** to cancel random play.

### Scan

Press **SCAN** to play the first ten seconds of each track. While a scan is in progress press **SCAN** again or **BACK** to play a track.

### Pause Mode

When the volume is at zero, play will pause. Start play again by turning the volume up.

### Disc Text - ON or OFF

Some CDs have title information. The information is shown as text on the **DISPLAY**.

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <CD Menu...> Enter <Disc text> Enter.

If information is stored on the disc, this is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

### Ejecting one CD

Press **EJECT**.

 *For traffic safety reasons, the CD stays out for 12 seconds. The player will then draw back in the disc and set to pause mode. Press CD to start the player.*

### Ejecting all CDs

Press and hold **EJECT** (for longer than two seconds). The entire magazine is emptied, CD by CD. ‘Eject all’ is shown on the **DISPLAY**. This function can only be used when the vehicle is stationary and is interrupted if the vehicle starts to move. For traffic safety reasons, the ejected CD stays out for 12 seconds. It must then be removed, or the function is cancelled.

## iPod and USB Functions

### iPod and USB Connection

 *The iPod port is compatible with generation three iPods onwards.*

 *The USB port is only compatible with USB storage devices, e.g. Memory Sticks.*

 *On initial connection and on every engine start the system will synchronize with the connected device. This will take a short while to complete.*

 *The iPod controls will not operate while connected to the vehicle audio system. All functionality will be from the vehicle audio system.*

Locate the iPod cable or the USB socket in the armrest cubby box and connect the:

- iPod player cable to the iPod cable
- USB device to the USB port

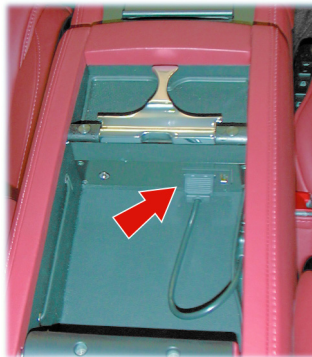
If not already ON, set the audio system to ON.

Repeatedly press the **MODE** button until either 'iPod' or 'USB' shows on the **DISPLAY**.

The iPod or USB device can now be operated by the audio system.

### Playing Tracks

Once the mode has been set to either iPod or USB play automatically starts.



### Selecting Tracks

Press **ENTER** to show the music folder list. Using the **JOYSTICK** (up or down) or the **TUNING** dial navigate through the folder list or music tracks. Press **ENTER** to open a folder or play a track.

### Pause Mode

When the volume is at zero, play will pause. Start play by turning the volume up.

### Fast Forward and Rewind

Press and hold the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) to search within a track or the whole music folder. The search continues as long as the **JOYSTICK** is held.

### Changing Tracks

Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right), or the **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to play the next or previous track.

### Scan

Press **SCAN** to play the first ten seconds of each track. While a scan is in progress press **SCAN** again or **BACK** to play the required track.

### Random

Plays tracks from the music folder(s) in random order.

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <iPod Menu...> or <USB Menu...> Enter <Random...> Enter. Select <Off>, <Folder> or <All> Enter for the player to randomly choose from none, one or all music folders. 'RND' or 'RND ALL' is shown in the **DISPLAY** while the function is ON.

Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) or the **SCROLL** button to select the next or previous random track.

### RDS Radio stations

News broadcasts (NEWS) and traffic information (TP) are also available when in USB or iPod mode. Refer to iPod and USB menus.

## Auxiliary Functions

### Audio Device Connection

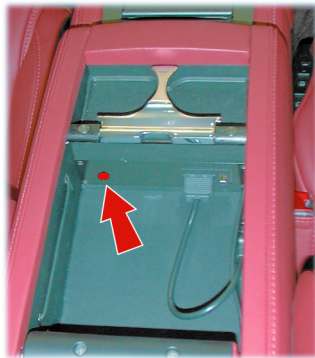
The auxiliary input socket is provided to connect audio devices which can not be connected using the iPod or USB connections.

 *Only volume control will be available from the vehicle audio system. All other functionality will be from the audio device.*

Locate the auxiliary socket in the front armrest cubby box. Connect the audio device to the auxiliary socket using a suitable cable.

If not already ON, set the audio system to ON. Repeatedly press the **MODE** button until 'AUX' shows on the **DISPLAY**.

The media device will now play through Infotainment system.



### Audio Device Volume

The vehicle audio system volume can be set at a higher or lower starting volume for the audio device.

Press **MENU**> Navigate to <AUX menu...> Enter <AUX input volume...> Enter. Turn the **TUNING** dial to set the volume level.

Press and hold **BACK** to return to the main display.

## Audio Menus

### Radio Menu

#### 1) FM Menu...

- 1) News
- 2) PTY...
  - 1) Select PTY...
  - 2) Search PTY
    - 1) Clear all PTY...
    - 2) Select PTY station
  - 3) Show PTY (ON or OFF)
- 3) Radio text
- 4) Sound settings...
- 5) Auto. volume control...

#### 2) AM Menu...

- 1) Sound settings...
- 2) Auto. volume control...

---

## Satellite Radio

### 1) SIRIUS Menu...

- 1) Add song to memory
- 2) Direct channel entry
- 3) SIRIUS radio text
- 4) Song seek
- 5) Advanced SIRIUS settings...
  - 1) Song memory
  - 2) Skip options
    - 1) Channel skip list
    - 2) Unskip all channels
    - 3) Temporally unskip all channels
  - 3) Lock options
    - 1) Channel lock list
    - 2) Unlock all channels
    - 3) Temporally unlock all channels
    - 4) Change code
  - 4) SIRIUS ID
- 6) Audio settings...
  - 1) Surround SIRIUS
  - 2) Equalizer...
  - 3) Auto. volume control...
  - 4) Reset all
- 7)

---

## CD Changer Menu

### 1) CD Menu...

- 1) Play list
- 2) Random...
  - 1) Off
  - 2) Single disc
  - 3) All discs
- 3) Disc text
- 4) Auto. volume control...

## iPod and USB Menu

### 1) iPod Menu... or USB Menu...

- 1) Playlist...
- 2) Random...
  - 1) Off
  - 2) Folder
  - 3) All
- 3) Track Information
- 4) Sound settings...
- 5) Auto. volume control...

---

## Auxiliary Menu

### 1) AUX Menu...

- 1) AUX input volume...
- 2) Sound settings...
- 3) Auto. volume control...



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



# Hands-Free Phone

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Introduction.....           | 9.2 |
| Hands-Free Functions .....  | 9.2 |
| Connecting a Phone.....     | 9.4 |
| Disconnecting a Phone ..... | 9.4 |
| Pairing Phones .....        | 9.5 |
| Selecting a Phone.....      | 9.6 |
| Using a Phone.....          | 9.7 |
| Phone Book .....            | 9.8 |
| Voice Mailbox.....          | 9.8 |
| Last Ten Numbers.....       | 9.9 |
| Hands-Free Menu .....       | 9.9 |

## Introduction

A mobile device equipped with hands-free (bluetooth) capability can be connected wirelessly to the vehicle's hands-free phone system. The vehicle's hands-free phone system then provides remote control of a range of the mobile phone's functions. The mobile phone can always be operated by its own keys regardless of whether or not it is connected.

The hands-free system is available when the vehicle key is in ignition position 'I' or 'II'. If, during a call, the vehicle key is moved to position '0' or removed the call will transfer to the mobile phone after approximately six seconds.

The system microphone is located in the vehicle roof above the drivers head and the speech from an incoming call is from the two door speakers.

 *The hands-free phone system will not recognise a mobile phone, even if it is 'paired', if the mobile phone does not have bluetooth enabled. For more information refer to the user guide for your mobile phone (Refer to page 9.4).*

 *The hands-free phone system does not support SMS (text messages).*

## Hands-Free Functions



**[1] VOLUME** - Volume control.

**[2] DISPLAY** - Shows options, menus and information.

**[3] TUNING** - Navigate through phone book and menus.

**[4] MENU** - Opens the main menu.

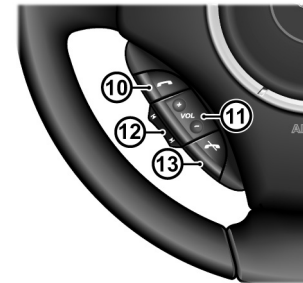
**[5] ENTER** - Press to answer or make a call, select in the menu or open a selection.

**[6] JOYSTICK** - Navigate in the menus, move forwards or backwards when entering text and digits.

**[7] PHONE** - Press to select hands-free mode or press and hold to cancel hands-free mode.

**[8] BACK** - End a call, navigate back in the menu, cancel a selection or erase the previous character when entering text and numbers.

**[9] KEYPAD** - Search through the phone book, speed dial or navigate in the menu.





**[10] CALL** - Press to answer a call or press to return to hands-free mode from audio when hands-free mode is ON.

**[11] VOLUME** - Volume control during a call.

**[12] SCROLL** - Navigate in the menus.

**[13] CANCEL** - Press to end a call or press to enter audio mode when hands-free mode is selected./P

### Hands-Free Phone ON

When the hands-free system is ON the  symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**. During a call this symbol will change to . When

a mobile phone is connected to the hands-free system the  symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**. If, after 30 seconds, the hands-free phone has not been used, the infotainment system will default to audio functions. Return to hands-free phone functions by pressing **PHONE** or **CALL**.

### Menus

The hands-free menu is available when the hands-free phone system is ON and selected. If not ON or not selected press **PHONE**. Press **MENU** to access the main menu.

### Search Path

Menu paths are shown for each operation in the following format:

<Phone menu...> Enter <Phone settings...> Enter <Sounds and volume...>

 In this chapter when asked to 'Press' a button, this means 'Press and release'. When this is not the case it will be clear in the text.

Several menu options will require a cross in a box  to select an option. Once the menu item is highlighted press **ENTER** to either check or uncheck the box. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.

### Call Menu

Press **MENU**, **ENTER** or **CALL** during an ongoing call to access the following functions:

**Mute microphone** - The hands-free system microphone is muted.

**Transfer call to mobile or Transfer call to vehicle** - The call can be transferred to or from the mobile phone or the vehicle phone.

**Phone book** - Access the phone book during a call.

 Some mobile phones will close the connection when the privacy function is used, this is normal. The vehicle system asks if you want to reconnect.

### Audio Settings

#### Call Volume

During a call the call volume can be regulated using the **VOLUME** dial or button.

#### Audio System Volume

The audio source can be automatically muted for incoming calls:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Phone settings...> Enter <Sounds and volume...> Enter <Mute radio> Enter.

If mute radio is OFF select one of the audio sources to control the audio system volume during an ongoing call.

#### Audio System Control

Not available during a call.

When the audio system is in operation while hands-free mode is ON press **CALL** to return to hands-free mode.

## Ring Volume

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Phone settings...> Enter <Sounds and volume...> Enter <Ring volume> Enter. Adjust using the **TUNING** dial.

## Ring Signals

The vehicle system has integrated ring signals that can be selected:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Phone settings...> Enter <Sounds and volume...> Enter <Ring signal> Enter <Select Ring signal 1, 2, 3 etc.> Enter.

 *The connected mobile phone's ring signal is not muted when one of the vehicles integrated signals is used.*

## Connecting a Phone

A connection between the vehicle hands-free system and a mobile phone is called a 'Paired Link'. When a paired link is set up the hands-free system remembers the mobile phone's ID.

Once the hands-free system and the mobile phone are paired, the hands-free system automatically connects every time the ignition is set to ON if the hands-free system (Press **PHONE**) and the mobile phone are ON.

A mobile phone can be paired either using the vehicle hands-free system or by using the mobile phone.

This system supports paired links with up to five phones.

 *The process of initiating a hands-free connection with a phone varies per phone manufacturer. For more information refer to the user's guide for your mobile phone.*

## Disconnecting a Phone

The mobile phone will **automatically** disconnect when moved out of the Hand-Free system's range or bluetooth is made unavailable on the mobile phone.

The mobile phone will **manually** disconnect when the hands-free system is set to OFF. Press and hold **PHONE** until  is removed from the **DISPLAY**. The function is also stopped when the ignition is set to OFF.

If the mobile phone has been disconnected from the hand-free system during an ongoing call, the call will transfer to the mobile phone.

 *Some mobile phones require that the transfer is confirmed from the phone's keypad.*

## Pairing Phones

### Initial Pairing

Use this procedure when pairing the first mobile phone to the hands-free system. If the hands-free system is not ON or in use, press **PHONE**.

The **DISPLAY** will show NO PAIRED PHONES. PRESS ENTER AND SELECT ADD A PHONE. Press **EXIT** to cancel. Press **ENTER**.

The hands-free system will asked if bluetooth is in discoverable mode (refer to the mobile phone manufactures instructions). If yes press **ENTER**. After a short while a list of phones which are in range and in discoverable mode will be shown.

 If the  symbol is shown in the **DISPLAY** when the ignition is ON, initial pairing can be completed using the mobile phone.

Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button or turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required mobile phone and press **ENTER**. The **DISPLAY** will then ask for a passkey to be entered into the mobile phone. The mobile phone will prompt for the passkey. Enter the passkey into the mobile phone.

The **DISPLAY** will show PHONE CONNECTING... then, if successful, SYNCHRONISING.

Once synchronizing has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

 If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will time-out.

 Synchronizing automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the vehicle system.

### Pairing Additional Phones

#### Pairing Using the Hands-Free System

 Disconnect any in use phones before pairing additional phones. If a phone is connected to the hands-free system pairing a new phone will not be possible until the hands-free system has no in use bluetooth connections.

 If, after 30 seconds, the hands-free phone has not been used, the infotainment system will default to audio functions. Return to hands-free phone functions by pressing **PHONE** or **CALL**.

Check that the mobile phone has bluetooth ON and visible. Check that the hands-free system is ON ( symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**).

The hands-free system automatically searches for the last used phone. If the last used phone is not found a list of paired phones will show along with <Add phone>. Select <Add phone> to pair a new phone to the system.

If the last used phone is found press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone Menu...> Enter <Bluetooth...> Enter <Change phone...> Enter <Add Phone...>.

Press **ENTER**. The hands-free system will asked if bluetooth is in discoverable mode (refer to the mobile phone manufactures instructions). If yes press **ENTER**. After a short while a list of phones which are in range and in discoverable mode will show.

Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button or turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required mobile phone and press **ENTER**.

The **DISPLAY** will then ask for a passkey to be entered into the mobile phone. The mobile phone will prompt for the passkey. Enter the passkey into the mobile phone.

The **DISPLAY** will show PHONE CONNECTING... then, if successful, SYNCHRONISING. Once synchronizing has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

 If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will time-out.

 Synchronizing automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the hands-free system.

### Pairing Using the Mobile Phone

 Disconnect any in use phones before pairing additional phones. If a phone is connected to the hands-free system pairing a new phone will not be possible until the hands-free system has no in use bluetooth connections.

Check that the hands-free system is selected ( symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**).

Follow the mobile phone manufactures instructions to search and connect to a new bluetooth device. The phone will search for discoverable bluetooth devices in its range.

Select ASTON MARTIN from the device list. The phone will prompt for a passkey.

 If ASTON MARTIN does not show check that the hands-free system is selected and search again.

Press **MENU** (on the vehicle) and move to <Phone menu...> Enter <Bluetooth...> Enter <Connect from Mobile Phone> Enter. The **DISPLAY** will then show a passkey, enter the passkey into the mobile phone.

The **DISPLAY** will show PHONE CONNECTING... then, if successful, SYNCHRONISING. Once synchronizing has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

 If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will time-out.

 Synchronizing automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the vehicle system.

### Removing a Paired Phone

#### Using the hands-free system

Press **MENU**. Navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Bluetooth...> Enter <Remove Phone> Enter.

A list of paired phones will show. Navigate to the required phone and press **ENTER** to erase or **BACK** to cancel.

## Selecting a Phone

 The phone to be selected must have bluetooth ON, visible and in close proximity to the hands-free phone system.

A phone can be selected by using the phone itself or by using the hands-free system:

### Using the Mobile Phone

If not ON or not selected, press **PHONE**.

Using the Mobile phone, follow the manufactures instructions to search and connect to a bluetooth device. The phone will search for discoverable bluetooth devices in its range. Select ASTON MARTIN from the device list. Select Connect.

 If ASTON MARTIN does not show check that the hands-free system is selected and search again. If ASTON MARTIN still does not show the mobile phone may not be paired (Refer to 'Pairing Phones', page 9.5)

### Using the Vehicle hands-free system

With the hands-free system already selected, press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone Menu...> Enter <Bluetooth...> Enter <Change Phone> Enter. A list of paired phones will show (along with Add phone). Navigate to the required phone and press **ENTER** to change or **BACK** to cancel.

Or, if the hands-free system is not ON:

Press **PHONE**. The system will then scan for the last used mobile phone. If found and it is the mobile required then press **ENTER**. If the last phone is not found the **DISPLAY** will show a list of paired phones within range (with bluetooth ON). Navigate to a phone and press **ENTER** to select that phone.

## Using a Phone

### Making a Call

Check that the hands-free system is selected ( symbol shows in the **DISPLAY**).

Press **PHONE**, or **CALL** on the steering wheel controls.

- Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to select a contact from the phone book. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

Or

- Dial the number using the keypad and press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call. Press **BACK** to erase a number. Press and hold **BACK** to erase the whole number.

### Ending Calls

To end a call press **CANCEL** or **BACK**.

### Reject a Call

Press **CANCEL** or **BACK** while the phone is ringing.

### Calling Using Voice Recognition

If the mobile phone supports voice dialling:

Press, hold and release **CALL** or **ENTER**. The amount of time required to hold in **CALL** or **ENTER** is dependant on the mobile phone.

Once 'Voice Tag Dialling' shows on the **DISPLAY**, allow one to two seconds before saying a name. The vehicle system will call the contact.

### Receiving Calls

To answer an incoming call press **CALL** or **ENTER**.

### Automatic Answer - ON or OFF

The automatic answer function means that calls are accepted automatically after four rings.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Phone settings...> Enter <Call options...> Enter <Automatic answer> Enter.

## Phone Book

The mobile phone's phone book is synchronised automatically to the vehicle system at each connection.

If it is not required to synchronize to phone book:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Phone settings...> Enter <Synchronizing phone book> Enter.

If the phone book contains a caller's contact information, this is shown in the **DISPLAY**.



*If the mobile phone does not support copying of the phone book, 'List is empty' is shown when copying is finished.*

## Contact Search

Searching for contacts is only performed in the connected mobile phone's phone book. Either:

Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to bring up the contact list. Navigate to the contact. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

Or

Use the **KEYPAD** to search the phone book. Press and hold a key (2 to 9) which relates to the first letter of the contact's name. This starts a search in the phone book based on the key's first letter. Navigate to the contact. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

Or

Press **PHONE**. Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Phone book...> Enter <Search> Enter. Using the **KEYPAD**, enter the first few letters of the contact name, press **ENTER**.

Navigate to a contact. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

## Voice Mailbox

To enter a voice mailbox number:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Phone settings...> Enter <Call options...> Enter <Voice mail number> Enter <Enter the number> Enter

Or

Press and hold **KEYPAD** number 1 to go to <Voice mail number>. Enter the number and press **ENTER**.

Use the stored number by pressing 1 for several seconds.

To change the voice mail number go to *Voice mail number*. Press and hold **BACK** to erase the whole number or press and release to erase individual numbers. Once the number has been erased then enter a new number.



*If the mobile phone has the voice mail number already stored then this will be placed into the system when synchronizing during pairing.*

## Last Ten Numbers

### Last Ten Dialed Numbers

Press **ENTER**. Use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required number. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call that number.

### Last Ten Missed and Received Numbers

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> Enter <Last 10 missed calls> or <Last 10 received calls> Enter.

Use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or turn the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required number. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call that number.



*Last ten dialled will also be available.*

## Hands-Free Menu

### 1) Phone Menu...

- 1) Last 10 missed calls
- 2) Last 10 received calls
- 3) Last 10 dialled calls
- 1) Phone book...
  - 1) Search
  - 2) Copy fr. mobile phone
- 2) Bluetooth...
  - 1) Change Phone...
  - 2) Remove Phone
  - 3) Connect from mobile phone
- 3) Phone settings...
  - 1) Call options...
    - 1) Automatic answer
    - 2) Voice mail number
  - 2) Sounds and volume...
    - 1) Ring volume
    - 2) Ring signals...
    - 3) Mute Radio
  - 3) Synchronizing phone book



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



# Satellite Navigation

|                             |       |                                 |       |
|-----------------------------|-------|---------------------------------|-------|
| Introduction .....          | 10.2  | Itinerary .....                 | 10.16 |
| System Controls .....       | 10.3  | Avoid Specific Areas.....       | 10.18 |
| Easy Mode Settings.....     | 10.6  | Information .....               | 10.19 |
| Using Easy Mode.....        | 10.6  | Current Position .....          | 10.19 |
| Advanced Mode Settings..... | 10.9  | Quick Menus .....               | 10.20 |
| Using Advanced Mode.....    | 10.11 | Maps .....                      | 10.21 |
| Store a Destination.....    | 10.15 | Frequently Asked Questions..... | 10.25 |
|                             |       | TMC License Agreement.....      | 10.26 |

## Introduction

The satellite navigation system is an integrated part of the infotainment system along with the audio system.

This navigation system has been developed to help guide you to the destination of your choice. The system includes features that lets you to set itineraries, search for certain types of points of interest along your route, store special destinations, etc.

The navigation system can be used without a destination being selected. The map with the position of your vehicle is shown on the **SCREEN** and your vehicle is shown with a blue triangle.

**⚠ Warning: Never use the navigation system or any other feature in the vehicle in a way that distracts you from the task of driving safely.**

**⚠ Warning: Distraction can lead to a serious accident. Set and make changes in the navigation system only with the vehicle parked.**

**⚠ Warning: Be aware of the current traffic situation.**

**⚠ Always use good judgment when following navigation system guidance, and do not follow guidance that seems contrary to your own best judgment. Never use the navigation system or any other feature in your vehicle in a way that distracts you from the task of driving safely. Distraction can lead to a serious accident. Set and make changes in your navigation system only with the vehicle parked. Be aware of the current traffic situation. Always comply with relevant traffic regulations.**

Two modes of operation are available:

**Easy Mode** - Provides simple functionality to enable the user to select a destination.

**Advanced Mode** - Provides all system functionality.

The navigation system has all maps and features, for the market area, installed in the vehicle's electronic memory.

A DVD player is provided to install map and feature up-dates as and when available.

The locations used in this chapter do not necessarily reflect known places and are for the purpose of describing operating procedures only.

## Global Positioning System

The vehicle's speed sensor and a gyro calculate the current position and the direction of travel of the vehicle using signals from the Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite system.

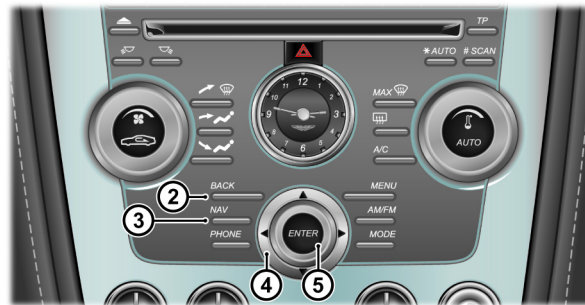
## Screen Care

The **SCREEN** must only be cleaned with a soft, lint free, dampened cloth, or a cloth with a mild window cleaning agent.

## Map Updates

Factors such as the constant expansion and rebuilding of the road network, new traffic regulations constantly being introduced etc. means that the digital map database is not always up-to-date. Digital maps are continuously updated and the coverage is increased gradually.

Map updates are available on DVD. For information on the latest versions and installation of map DVDs, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.



[1] **SCREEN** - Shows maps and provides detailed information on route type, distance, etc.

[2] **BACK** - Press to return to the previous menu or to undo a choice.

[3] **NAV** - Press to enable or disable Satellite navigation controls.

[4] **JOYSTICK** - Navigate through different menu options, traffic messages, etc.

[5] **ENTER** - Press to confirm, select or navigate from one submenu to the next submenu.

### Navigation System ON and OFF

#### To Set the Navigation System ON

The vehicle key must at position 'I' or 'II' in the ignition control.

1. Press the **NAV** button (button LED ON).
2. Press **ENTER**. The navigation screen will open. On start up the **SCREEN** will show the option of running the navigation system in easy or advanced mode.

Select <Easy> or <Advanced> using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**. The user mode can be changed at any time in the system setup menu.

The **SCREEN** defaults to map view.

 The system may need a few seconds to detect your position and movement.

While the **NAV** button LED is ON the **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK** functions only operate the navigation system.

To use the **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK** functions for audio or hands-free phone functions either:

- Press the **NAV** button again (button LED OFF).
- or
- Press any audio button other than **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK**.

Press **NAV** (button LED ON) again to return to navigation controls.

 Pressing the **AM/FM** or **MODE** buttons will move the current audio source.

### To Set the Navigation System OFF

 If in map mode press the **BACK** to view the main menu.

From the main menu move to <Shutdown> and press **ENTER**. The navigation screen will close after a few seconds.

Press the **NAV** button (button LED OFF) or press any audio button other than **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK** to return functions back to audio.

 The navigation system can be accessed even if the ignition is OFF. Always set the vehicle key to position '0' in the ignition control or remove the vehicle key when the system is not in use so the battery does not become discharged.

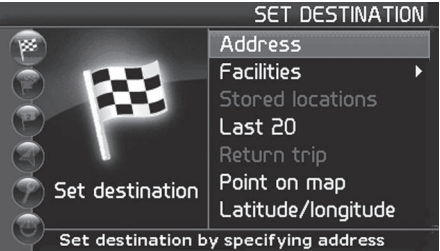
 If the navigation system is ON when the vehicle key is remove the system will shut down. When the vehicle key is inserted again and placed at position 'I' or 'II' the navigation system will start up automatically. Press the **NAV** button to select navigation controls.

### Main Menu

The main screen provides access to system functions. While in the default screen (map view) press **BACK**. Using the **JOYSTICK** select a menu option and then move right or press **ENTER** to access the functions.

The navigation menu is only available when the **NAV** button LED is ON.

 When asked to 'Press' a button, this means 'Press and release'. When this is not the case it will be clear in the text.



### Easy Menu

- Set destination
- Show destination<sup>1</sup>
- Remove destination<sup>1</sup>
- Settings
- Shut down

### Advanced Menu

- Set destination
- Itinerary<sup>1</sup>
- Next destination<sup>1</sup>
- Current position
- Settings
- Shut down

<sup>1</sup>. Available when a destination is entered.

## Search path

Menu paths are shown for each operation in the following format:

**<Set destination>** Enter **<Address>** Enter

Menu selections in the text are shown by **<All Cities>**.

## Quick Menus



Press **ENTER** while in map view to access the quick menus. Select a quick menu using the **JOYSTICK**. Select an option and press **ENTER**. (Refer to 'Quick Menus', page 10.20).

Quick menus make it easier to access certain system options.

Some options are only accessible through the quick menus.

## Guidance Voice

**With Audio ON** - If guidance voice is ON, when guidance is provided the audio system will mute until the guidance message has finished.

**Phone in Use** - If guidance voice is ON, guidance messages will be muted if the hands-free phone system is in use.

If a guidance message is broadcast during a phone call an audible 'Beep' will be heard.

## Demo (Guidance Simulation)

### Advanced Mode Only

**<Settings>** Enter **<Start demo>** Enter

The demo shows how the system works when the vehicle is stationary by simulating a trip to a specified destination. All settings can be made during the demonstration. Select **<Stop demo>** to stop the simulation.

A destination must be entered for the demo to work.

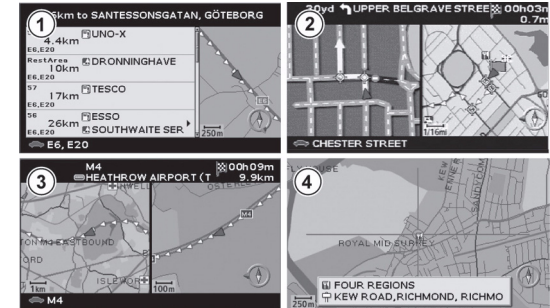
## Screen Display

The screen display is determined by factors such as geographic location and settings that have been made, such as map scale, the symbols selected to be shown, etc.

**[1] ON A MOTORWAY** - The screen will show the POI along the highway. This function is available even if a destination has not been selected. A scroll list at the right shows that there are additional alternatives.

**[2] DETAILED MAP SHOWING INTERSECTIONS** - The screen will show lanes on the road to help you select the correct one at the next intersection. This function is only available on major roads. Voice guidance is also always provided.

**[3] TWO MAPS HAVE BEEN SELECTED IN SETTINGS** - Both sections of the screen show the same map, but with different scales (Refer to 'Maps', page 10.21).



# Easy Mode Settings

## System Settings

<Settings> Enter

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings made using **ENTER**.

<Guiding voice> - A male or a female guiding voice can be selected.

<Guiding volume> - Guiding voice volume.

<Language> - Select the language to be used.

<Color> - Select <Black>, <Blue>, <Dark> or <Chrome>.

<Map view> - Select to view either a 2D or 3D map.

<Distance unit> - Select <Miles> or <km>.

<User mode> - Select <Easy> or <Advanced>. All destinations will be erased if changing operating modes.



[4] **MAP SCROLL MODE** - (Refer to 'Maps', page 10.21).

## Unverified Roads

A small number of roads in the system may be unverified. This means that information on signs, one-way streets, left turns, etc., may not be accurate. An itinerary containing unverified roads will be shown with gray arrows instead of the usual yellow ones. The system provides information when an unverified road is added to an itinerary and when the vehicle begins to travel on one of these roads.

## Compass

The red tip of the compass needle points in a northerly direction on the map. The destination arrow in the outer ring of the compass points in the direction of the destination. Under <Map options> on the Settings menu you can choose to show or hide the compass and destination arrow.

# Using Easy Mode

The navigation system requires a destination to be entered so that a route to the destination can then be calculated. In easy mode only one destination can be entered at a time.

 If the **SCREEN** is in map view press **BACK** to access the main menu.

## Destination by an Address

<Set Destination> Enter <Address> Enter

The last selected state and city will be remembered. If searching for a destination outside the current state move to <State> and press **ENTER**.

| SET DESTINATION |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| Country:        | <All countries>      |
| City:           | <All cities>         |
| Street:         | <All streets>        |
| Number:         | <All street numbers> |
| Junction:       | <All junctions>      |
| Input country   |                      |

Use the **JOYSTICK** to spell out the desired state from the character table. Press **ENTER** for each letter.

 *When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the missing letters itself.*

A list of states matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**. A scroll bar on the right shows that there are several alternatives in the list. The number shows how many.

Using the **JOYSTICK** move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, return to the character table by pressing **BACK**. Press **BACK** to erase the entered letters one at a time.

### Select City

Move to <City> and press **ENTER**.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to spell out the desired city from the character table. Press **ENTER** for each letter.

 *When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the missing letters itself.*

A list of cities matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**. A scroll bar on the right shows that there are several alternatives in the list. The number shows how many.

Using the **JOYSTICK** move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, return to the character table by pressing **BACK**. Press **BACK** to erase the entered letters one at a time.

 *The definition of city or area may vary from state to state or even within a state. Sometimes it refers to a municipality, while other times it refers to an individual section of a city.*

### Select Street

Move to <Street> and press **ENTER**. Select as described for select city.

 *It is also possible to search for street addresses throughout a state without specifying a particular city.*

 *Street addresses are not stored in the system for some small towns. The town centre, however, can always be specified as the destination.*

Once a street has been selected it is then possible to move to <Start Guide>.

When <Start guide> is selected, the system begins calculating the route and distance to the destination (during this time, a yellow symbol is shown at the top of the **SCREEN**). If a detour is made from the planned route during the trip, the system automatically calculates a new route.

 *If neither a street number or an intersecting street is specified the system guides to the middle of the street chosen.*

### Select Street Number or Intersection

If the street number of the selected address is known, it can also be entered to make guidance more exact. An intersecting street can also be entered instead of the street number.

Move to <Number> and press **ENTER**. Existing street numbers are then shown. Select a number using the **JOYSTICK** (right or left) and press **ENTER**.

Once a valid number has been entered move to:

<Set> - Confirm entered number.

<Cancel> - Go back to the previous screen.

Move to <Interse> and press **ENTER**.

The roads that intersect the selected street are shown in a list. Select from among the streets and press **ENTER**.

### Destination by a Zip Code

Using the **JOYSTICK** move to <City> and press **ENTER**. Move to <Zip code> and press **ENTER**.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to select the desired letters and numbers from the character table and press **ENTER**. Move down and select a zip code from the list. Press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, press **BACK** to return to the table of characters. Press **BACK** to erase entered characters.

 *In some states the entire zip code cannot be specified.*

Move to <Street> and press **ENTER**. Choose letters using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER** or move down and choose a street name directly from the list if options are available.

Then move to <Number> or <Interse> to specify a street number or a crossroads. Select <Start Guide> to obtain guidance to the destination.

### Destination by a Point of Interest (POI)

<Set destination> Enter <POI> Enter

Points of Interest is a collective name for places such as petrol stations, hotels, restaurants, Aston Martin Dealers, hospitals, vehicle parking, etc.

Select <City> and press **ENTER**. Select a city as described earlier.

 *When a city is entered POI are searched for around the city area. If you want to search for a facility by <Name> or <Type> without specifying a city, select <City>, press **ENTER**, then **BACK** to erase the current city.*

It is possible to first select <Type> then <Name> without entering a city.

Move to <Type> or <Name> and press **ENTER**.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to select the desired letters and press **ENTER** or move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

Some POI (when selecting by <Type>) have further options. For example, select petrol station and press **ENTER**.

The names of different petrol chains found in that area are then shown. Select from among the alternatives and press **ENTER**. Return to the character table with **BACK**. Press **BACK** to erase the entered letters one at a time.

### Last 20 Destinations

<Set destination> Enter <Last 20> Enter

Press **ENTER** to see the 20 most recently entered destinations. Move to the desired destination using the **JOYSTICK** and press right or **ENTER** to access the submenu.

<Set as destination> - Start guidance to the destination.

<Delete location> - Erases the entered destination.

### Destination from a Point on the Map

<Set Destination> Enter <Point on map> Enter

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move the cross on the map and specify a destination directly on the map. The centre of the cross shows the destination on the map.

The name and destination that correspond to the cross position are shown at the bottom of the map.



## Advanced Mode Settings

Press **ENTER** to access the scroll menu:

**<Scale>** - Press the **JOYSTICK** right to access the scale quick menu. Move to <+> or <-> then press **ENTER** repeatedly to zoom in or out or the map. Press **BACK** to return to map view.

**<Set as destination>** - Press **ENTER**. Guidance to the destination will start automatically.

### Show Destination

**<Show Destination>** Enter

Show destination provides a map view of the intended destination, time to destination and distance to go. Press **BACK** twice to return to map view.

### Route Options

**<Settings>** Enter **<Route options>** Enter

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings by pressing **ENTER**.

#### <Route>

Select a <Fast>, <Short> or <Easy> when calculating a route.

 *Easy - Avoiding complex intersections and difficult manoeuvres, less narrow roads and intersections.*

**<Avoid highways>** - Select if highways are to be avoided when calculating the route.

**<Avoid toll roads>** - Select if toll roads are to be avoided when calculating the route.

**<Avoid ferries>** - Select if ferries are to be avoided when calculating the route.

**<Avoid car train>** - Select if car trains are to be avoided when calculating the route.

**<Avoid time-restr. roads>** - Select if the system should avoid time-restricted roads when calculating the route. The correct time zone must be set for the function to work (Refer to 'System Settings', page 10.10).

**<Avoid specified areas>** - Select the areas the system is to avoid when calculating the route (Refer to 'Avoid Specific Areas', page 10.18).

**<Reset to default>** - Restore factory settings. Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select <OK> or <Cancel> and press **ENTER**.

 *The system can only use larger roads when calculating a route extending over a long distance. If <No> is selected for toll roads and highways, they are avoided to the greatest possible extent and are only used if there is no other reasonable alternative.*

## Map Options

<**Settings**> Enter <**Map options**> Enter

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings by pressing **ENTER**.

<**POI selection**> - Press the **JOYSTICK** right to obtain the submenu.

<Show all> - All facility symbols on the map image are to show.

<Hide all> - No symbols are to show.

<Show selected> - Choose which symbols are to show.

Select using the **JOYSTICK** (right or left) and confirm settings by pressing **ENTER**.

<**Map**> - Select if the map is to show. If the map is hidden, the system guides with an arrow.

<**Map view**> - If in one map view on the **SCREEN**, select to view either a 2D or 3D map. If in two map view on the **SCREEN** select views for left and right maps (Refer to 'Maps', page 10.21)

<**2D Map orientation**> - Select whether north or the heading (direction of travel) should be up when looking at the map.

<**Compass**> - Select if the compass is to be shown on the **SCREEN**.

 <2D Map orientation> is only available when 2D view is selected in <Map view>.

<**Current Location**> - Select if the name of the street on which the vehicle is currently driving should be shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**.

<**Reset to default**> - Restore factory settings. Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select <OK> or <Cancel> and press **ENTER**.

## Guiding Options

<**Settings**> Enter <**Guiding options**> Enter

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings by pressing **ENTER**.

 Which areas have accident blackspots and or safety cameras marked on the map is regulated by legislation in the respective states.

<**Time/dist. to go**> - Select <RTA> (Remaining time to arrival) or <ETA> (Estimated time of arrival). Distance to go will also show. Select <Hide> if this information is not to be shown.

<**POI warning**> - Select if an audible and visual warning is to sound and show when approaching an accident blackspot or a safety camera.

<**Reset to default**> - Restore factory settings. Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select <OK> or <Cancel> and press **ENTER**.

## System Settings

<**Settings**> Enter <**System settings**>

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings made using **ENTER**.

<**Guiding voice**> - A male or a female guiding voice can be selected.

<**Guiding volume**> - Guiding voice volume.

<**Language**> - Select the language to be used.

<**Menu color**> - Select <Black>, <Chrome> or <Blue>.

<**Map color**> - Select <Bright 1>, <Bright 2> or <Dark>.

<**Screen saver**> - Select whether the screen saver is to be used (comes ON after 30 seconds).

## Using Advanced Mode

**<Help>** - Select if help texts are to show at the bottom of the **SCREEN**.

**<Distance unit>** - Select **<Miles>** or **<km>**.

**<User mode>** - Select **<Easy>** or **<Advanced>**. All destinations will be erased if changing operating modes.

**<Date & time info>** - Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Set the date and time format.

**<GPS Information>** - Press the **JOYSTICK** right to view coordinates and address of the vehicle's position, as well as the number of satellites the system is in contact with.

**<About>** - System information.

**<Reset to default>** - Restore factory settings. Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select **<OK>** or **<Cancel>** and press **ENTER**.

The navigation system requires a destination to be entered so that a route to the destination can then be calculated. Various destination options are available.

Once a valid destination has been entered **<Start Guide>** will be available.

Various destinations can be entered and saved as an itinerary (Refer to 'Itinerary', page 10.16).

 If the **SCREEN** is in map view press **BACK** to access the main menu.

### Destination by an Address

**<Set Destination>** Enter **<Address>** Enter



The last selected state will be remembered. If searching for a destination outside the current state move to **<State>** and press **ENTER**.

 Press the **JOYSTICK** right when an arrow is shown on the right of the line, a list of the five last entered states will show. Select the required state, if available, from the list and press **ENTER**.



Use the **JOYSTICK** to spell out the desired state from the character table. Press **ENTER** for each letter.

When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the missing letters itself.

A list of states matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**. A scroll bar on the right shows that there are several alternatives in the list. The number shows how many.

Using the **JOYSTICK** move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, return to the character table by pressing **BACK**. Press **BACK** to erase the entered letters one at a time.

### Select City

Select <City> and press **ENTER**.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to spell out the desired city from the character table. Press **ENTER** for each letter.

A list of Cities matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**.

Press the **JOYSTICK** right when an arrow is shown on the right of the line. A list of the five last entered cities will show. Select the required city, if available, from the list and press **ENTER**.

When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the missing letters itself.

A scroll bar on the right shows that there are several alternatives in the list. The number shows how many.

Using the **JOYSTICK** move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, return to the character table by pressing **BACK**. Press **BACK** to erase the entered letters one at a time.

The definition of city or area may vary from state to state or even within a state.

States, cities and street names are erased when the destinations in 'Last 20' are erased.

### Select Street

Move to <Street> and press **ENTER**.

It is also possible to search for street addresses throughout a state without specifying a particular city.

Street addresses are not stored in the system for some small towns. The town centre, however, can always be specified as the destination.

Once a street has been selected it is then possible to move to <Start Guide>, <Itinerary> or <Information>.

When <Start guide> is selected, the system begins calculating the route and distance to the destination (during this time, a yellow symbol is shown at the top of the **SCREEN**).

If a detour is made from the planned route during the trip, the system automatically calculates a new route.

 If neither a street number or an intersecting street is specified the system guides to the middle of the street chosen.

### Select Street Number or Intersection

If the street number of the selected address is known, it can also be entered to make guidance more exact. An intersecting street can also be entered instead of the street number.

Move to <Number> and press **ENTER**. Existing street numbers are then shown. Select a number using the **JOYSTICK** (right or left) and press **ENTER**.

Once a valid number has been entered move to:

<Set> - Confirm entered number.

<Information> - Provides information on the destination. Press **BACK** and then <Set> or press **BACK** again to cancel.

Move to <Interse> and press **ENTER**.

The roads that intersect the selected street are shown in a list. Select from among the streets and press **ENTER**.

### Destination by a Zip Code

Using the **JOYSTICK** move to <City> and press **ENTER**. Move to <Zip code> and press **ENTER**.



Use the **JOYSTICK** to select the desired letters and numbers from the character table and press **ENTER**. Move down and select a zip code from the list. Press **ENTER**.

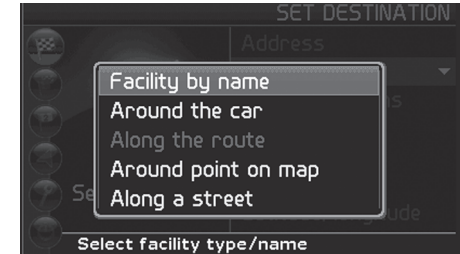
While scrolling through the list, press **BACK** to return to the table of characters. Press **BACK** to erase entered characters.

Move to <Street> and press **ENTER**. Choose letters using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER** or move down and choose a street name directly from the list if options are available.

### Destination by a Point of Interest (POI)

<Set destination> Enter <POI> Enter

Points of Interest is a collective name for places such as petrol stations, hotels, restaurants, Aston Martin Dealers, hospitals, vehicle parking, etc.



<POI by name> - Move to <Type> or <Name> and press **ENTER**. Enter the name of a facility or select a facility type from the list in the menu. The list can vary and only shows the POI of the selected city or area.

<Around the car> - The system searches in a circle with a maximum radius of 155 mile. The search is stopped when 40 POI are found.

Press **ENTER** and select <Last 5> or <All types>. Select a Point of Interest from the list and press **ENTER**. Select from the list of Point of Interest names and press **ENTER**. Select <Add to itinerary> or <POI information>.

 It is also possible to search for POI around the vehicle, along the itinerary and along the highway using the quick menu (Refer to 'Quick Menus', page 10.20).

<**Along the route**> - Use the procedure described for <Around the car>. When a destination has been specified, the system can search for POI within an area maximum 0.6 mile from the route.

<**Around point on map**> - The system searches the same way as <Around the car>, but around a specified point on the map. Enter map scroll (press the **JOYSTICK** left, right, up or down) and scroll to a destination on the map. Press **ENTER** and select <POI around>.

<**Along a street**> - The system searches along a specified street. Select an option using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**.

### Destination by a Stored Location

<**Set destination**> Enter <**Stored destinations**> Enter

A stored location is a destination stored previously, i.e. your home address, an airport, etc. If no destinations are stored this option will not be available.

A list of stored destinations is shown. Use the **JOYSTICK** to move to a stored destination. Press **ENTER** to access the submenu.

Select an option and press **ENTER**.

<**Add to itinerary**> - Add the stored destination in the itinerary.

<**Information**> - Provides information on the stored destination.

<**Edit**> - Change the name, etc. of the stored destination.

<**Sorting**> - Sort stored destinations by icon or name.

<**Delete Destination**> - Erase a stored destination.

<**Del. all**> - Erase all stored destinations.

### Last 20 Destinations

<**Set destination**> Enter <**Last 20**> Enter

Press **ENTER** to see the 20 most recently entered destinations. Move to the desired destination using the **JOYSTICK** and press right or **ENTER** to access the submenu.

<**Add to itinerary**> - Adds the destination to the itinerary.

<**Information**> - Provides information on the destination.

<**Delete Location**> - Erase the entered destination.

### Return Trip

<**Set destination**> Enter <**Return trip**> Enter

Press **ENTER** to obtain guidance back to the starting point.

Select <Start guidance> and press **ENTER**. The system then starts guiding back to the destination Start guidance was last selected.

### Destination from a Point on the Map

<**Set Destination**> Enter <**Point on map**> Enter

The centre of the cross shows the current destination on the map. The name and destination that correspond to the cross position are shown at the bottom of the map.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move the cross to the desired destination and press **ENTER** to access the Scroll menu. Move to <Set as destination> and press **ENTER**.

### Destination by Coordinates

**<Set Destination>** Enter **<Latitude / longitude>**

Using the **JOYSTICK** move from row to row and up or down to set coordinates.

**<OK>** - Shows the destination of the specified coordinates on the map. Press **ENTER** to access the scroll menu. Move to **<Set as destination>** and press **ENTER** to select as a destination. Press **BACK** to return to coordinate input.

**<Cancel>** - Return to the previous screen.

## Store a Destination

Up to 250 destinations can be stored for re-use in different itineraries. An audible signal notifies the driver that a stored location is approaching and that further information can be linked with the stored location.

## Saving a Location from the Itinerary

<Itinerary> Enter

Using the **JOYSTICK** move up or down the itinerary to the destination you want to store and press **ENTER** to access the submenu. Select **<Store>** and press **ENTER**.

Select the symbol to be shown in the map and press **ENTER**. Enter the required name. Scroll to <Store> and press **ENTER**.



## Saving a Location from the Map

Press the **JOYSTICK** in any direction to enter map scroll. Move to the destination you want to store and press **ENTER**. Select <Store> from the Scroll menu and press **ENTER**.

Move to the symbols. Select and press **ENTER**. Enter the required name. Scroll to <Store> and press **ENTER**.

## Adjust the Location

Select *<Edit> Enter <Adjust> Enter* to move the position of the stored location on the map.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move the cross (on the map) to the new position of the stored location and press **ENTER**. Select *<Store location>*  
Enter *<Store>* Enter to save the change. Press **BACK** to return to the main screen.

# Itinerary

<Itinerary> Enter

The Itinerary menu is available once a destination has been entered. An itinerary with several intermediate destinations can be created to avoid entering destination after destination during your trip. One final destination with up to six intermediate destinations can be specified in an itinerary.



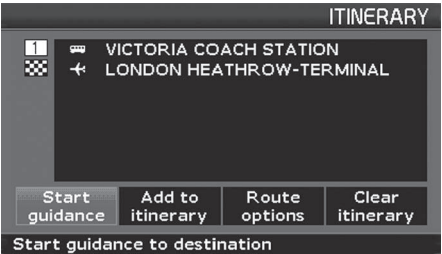
## Add Information

<Set Destination> Enter <Stored locations> Enter

Move to the stored location in the list and press **ENTER**. Select <Add info.> and press **ENTER** to add further information on a stored location to the list provided.

Select <Store> and press **ENTER** to save the change(s). Press **BACK** repeatedly to return to the main screen.

Press **BACK** to erase the original name and replace it with a new one.



<Start guidance> - Starts guidance to the destination.

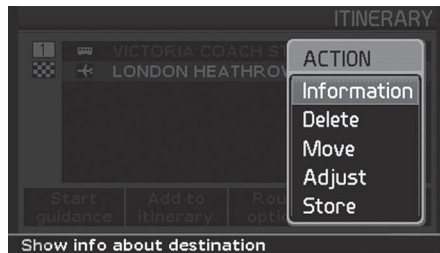
<Add to itinerary> - Add another destination using the <Set destination> screen.

<Route options> - Settings for route priorities.

<Clear itinerary> - Erase the entire itinerary.



## Edit an Itinerary



Select a destination in the itinerary and press **ENTER** to access options.

Select an option and press **ENTER**.

**<Information>** - Provides information on the destination.

**<Delete>** - Clears the destination from the itinerary.

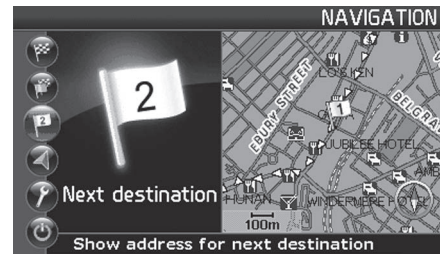
**<Move>** - Changes the position of the destination in the itinerary.

**<Adjust>** - Changes the destination of the destination on the map.

**<Store>** - Saves the destination under **<Stored Destinations>**.

## Next Destination

**<Next destination>** Enter



Next Destination shows information on the next destination in the itinerary such as name, remaining journey time and distance from the current position to the destination.



Press the **<<** or **>>** buttons to view more destinations (if available).

Move to **<Map>** and press **ENTER** to view the whole map image and obtain map scroll. Press **ENTER** again to obtain the map scroll menu (Refer to 'Maps', page 10.21).

## Avoid Specific Areas

### Specify an Area on the Map

<Settings> Enter <Route options> Enter <Avoid specified areas>

Press the **JOYSTICK** right, move to <Selected> and press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select <Map>.

Using the **JOYSTICK**, move the centre point of the hairline cross to the centre of the area to be avoided. The name of the destination the centre point rests on is shown at the bottom of the map.

The rectangle shows the size of the area. Press **ENTER** to obtain the submenu.

Select option in the submenu and press **ENTER**.

<Scale> - Specify the size of the area to be avoided. Move to + or - and press **ENTER** repeatedly to adjust the scale. Press **BACK** to accept.

<Set area to avoid> - Saves specified area. Select <OK>.

<Adjust size> - Change the size of the area using the **JOYSTICK**. Press **BACK** to undo the change, or press **ENTER** and select <Set area to avoid> to save.

<Adjust area> - Move the area using the **JOYSTICK**. Press **BACK** to undo the move, or press **ENTER** and select <Set area to avoid> to save.

### Specify an Area Address

<Settings> Enter <Route options> Enter <Avoid specified areas>

Press the **JOYSTICK** right, move to <Selected> and press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select <Address>.

Enter the address of the area to be avoided. The address then constitutes the centre of the area.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the rows and press **ENTER** to enter the address. Once a valid area has been selected, move to <Set>, press **ENTER**.

The specified area is shown on the map. Press **ENTER** to obtain the submenu.

Select <Scale>, <Set area to avoid>, <Adjust size> or <Adjust area>.

<Cancel> - Returns to saved areas.

### Select an Area to Avoid

<Settings> Enter <Route options> Enter <Avoid specified areas>

Press the **JOYSTICK** right:

<None> - Press **ENTER** to deselect areas already selected.

<Selected> - Press the **JOYSTICK** right to view specified areas. Press the **JOYSTICK** right to select or deselect areas already saved.

### Avoid Area Options

<Settings> Enter <Route options> Enter <Avoid specified areas>

Press the **JOYSTICK** right, move to <Selected> and press the **JOYSTICK** right.

Scroll to a specified area or an empty specified area and press **ENTER**. Choose option on the submenu using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**.

<Map> - Press **ENTER** and use the **JOYSTICK** to select the area to be avoided directly on the map. This will overwrite any current specified area.

## Information

**<Address>** - Enter the address of the area to be avoided. The address constitutes the centre of the area. This will overwrite any current specified area.

**<Edit>** - Change the name of the saved area. Press **BACK** to erase the current area name. Enter a new name and select **<Set>** to accept or **<Cancel>**.

**<Delete>** - Erase a saved area. Confirm with **<OK>**.

The address, coordinates and in some cases the telephone number of a facility is can be viewed when ever **<Information>** is available.

**<Map>** - Press **ENTER** to see the facility destination on the map.

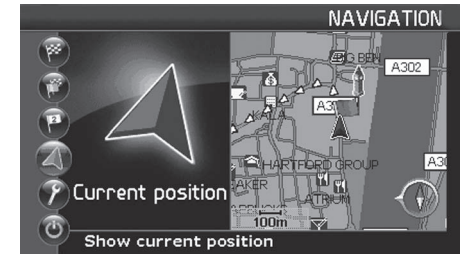
**<2nd Fac>** - Shows related POI in the area around the first facility.

**<Call>** - If the information screen contains a valid phone number press **<Call>** to call that number. The call will be place through the vehicle hands-free phone system.

## Current Position

**<Current position>** Enter

The map image shows the vehicle's position and information on the destination, for example name and coordinates. **<GPS>** shows the number of satellites the system is in contact with, on the left side of the **SCREEN**.



## Quick Menus

When in map mode press **ENTER** to access the quick menus. Use the **JOYSTICK** to scroll through the menus.



**[1] MAP SCALE** - Move to <+> or <-> then press **ENTER** repeatedly to zoom in or out of the map. Scale is shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**.

Select the 'green flag + finish flag' option to view the complete route. Select the 'vehicle + finish flag' option to view the remaining route from the current position to the destination.

If two map images are shown the **MAP SCALE** symbol shows at both ends of the quick menu.

**[2] GUIDANCE** - Press **ENTER** to repeat a voice guidance.

**[3] MAP AND ROUTE OUTLINE - (Advanced mode only)**

**<Route Outline>** - The destination and remaining distance are shown at the top of the **SCREEN**. The next guidance point is highlighted and is followed by a list of remaining guidance points. In addition the distance between guidance points and a type of manoeuvre arrow are shown.

Guidance points are erased as they are passed. If a deviation is made from the given route, the system calculates a new one.

**<Map View>** - Choose between one or two maps. Select **<One map>** or **<Two maps>** view. Different degrees of magnification can be selected for each map image of the same area.

**[4] DETOUR - (Advanced Mode Only)**

When the detour function is used, the system calculates an alternate route to avoid part of the calculated route. This is used to avoid construction, for example. Move to the detour quick menu using the **JOYSTICK**.

Set the number of miles the route is to be avoided using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**. The system then calculates a new route and avoids the original route for the specified number of miles starting from the current position. A destination must be specified for the function to work.

**<Avoid Specific Street>** Select **<Avoid>** and press **ENTER**. A list of streets that are part of the route are shown. Move to the street to be avoided using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**.

**[5] POINTS OF INTEREST - (Advanced Mode Only)**

Search for POI which are easily accessible from the highway. Select from **<Around the car>**, **<Along the route>** or **<Along h. way>**. When a calculated route extends over more than one highway, the system only searches along the current section of highway.

If no route is calculated, the system searches along the highway the vehicle is travelling on. The list shows rest areas, petrol stations and restaurants along the highway along with the distance. Select a facility using the **JOYSTICK**.

## Maps

The **DISPLAY** can show either one or two maps. In two map view each map view can have different viewing scales. Select one or two

maps using the  quick menu.

### One Map Settings

Move to <Settings> Enter <Map options> Enter <Map view>. Press the **JOYSTICK** right or left to select from <2D North>, <2D Heading> or <3D>.

 2D - from directly above. 3D - obliquely from above.

When viewing the map in 3D the map elevation is adjustable.

To change the map elevation move to <Settings> Enter <Map options> Enter <Map view> Enter.

If not already selected select 3D and press **ENTER**. An elevation adjustment window will show in the bottom left corner of the **DISPLAY**. Use the **JOYSTICK** to move up or down to change the map elevation, press **ENTER** to select. Press **BACK** repeatedly to return to map view.

### Two Map Settings

#### Right Map

Move to <Settings> Enter <Map options> Enter <Right map view>. Press the **JOYSTICK** right or left to select from <2D North>, <2D Heading> or <3D>.

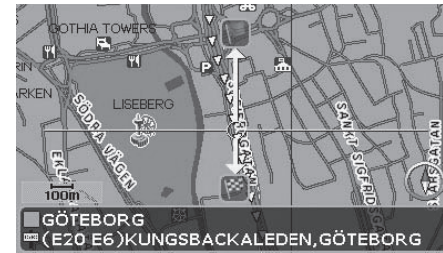
In 3D map view the direction of travel is always upwards on the screen. Map elevation can be adjusted as described for One map Settings.

In 2D map view select whether the direction of travel or North is to be upwards on the screen.

#### Left Map

Move to <Settings> Enter <Map options> Enter <Left map view>. Press the **JOYSTICK** right or left to select from <2D North> or <2D Heading>.

### Map Scroll



While in map view move the **JOYSTICK** in any direction to start map scroll.

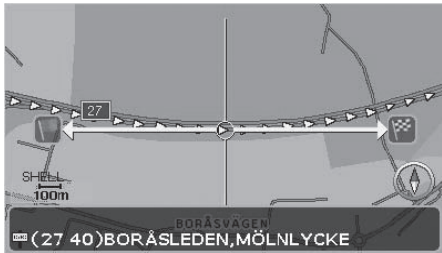
The **JOYSTICK** can then be used to move the cross freely over a large area with a detailed scale.

 If using map scroll in while in 3D view the view will default to 2D. The destination that corresponds to the cross position is shown at the bottom of the map.

## Follow Route

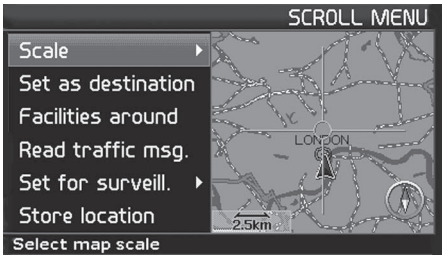
To follow the current route on the map move the centre of the cross to rest over the route. Once the cross rests over the route either the horizontal or vertical cross line will show thicker. If the thicker line is vertical press and hold the **JOYSTICK** left or right, if the thicker line is horizontal press and hold the **JOYSTICK** up or down. While the **JOYSTICK** pressed the cross will follow the intended route.

Flag symbols show whether the line points towards the start of the route or towards the destination.



## Scroll Menu

Press **ENTER** to access the scroll menu.



**<Scale>** - Function to temporarily change the map scale. Press **BACK** to return to the original scale and to return to the vehicle's position on the map.

**<Set as destination>** - Select a location on the map as a destination or intermediate destination.

## Map Symbols



Airport



Amusement park



Aston Martin Dealer



ATM



Automobile club



Bank



Beach



Bowling



Bus station



Café



Casino



Cinema



City centre



Compressed natural gas



Concert Hall



Conference / Exhibition centre



Doctor



Dry cleaning



Embassy



Ferry terminal



Fire Brigade



Gasol/LPG



Golf course



Government office



Historical monument



Hospital



Hotel



Ice skating



Library



Large company



Look out



Marina



Movie theatre



Museum



Night club / Music club



Outdoor recreation area



Park & ride

-  Parking garage
-  Pharmacy
-  Place of worship
-  Police station
-  Post office
-  Public sport airport
-  Railway / Train station
-  Rest area
-  Restaurant

-  Shopping centre
-  Ski resort
-  Sports complex
-  Swimming pool
-  Theatre / Opera
-  Toll booth<sub>1</sub>
-  Tourist attraction
-  University / college

-  Vehicle hire / rental
-  Vehicle repair facility
-  Winery
-  Zoo

---

<sub>1</sub>. Cannot be selected as a destination.



## Frequently Asked Questions

**(Q) The position of the vehicle on the map is wrong.**

**(A)** The GPS system shows the position of the vehicle with an accuracy of about 66 ft. There is a greater chance of error when driving on roads lying parallel to another road, winding roads, roads on several levels and after driving a long distance without making any distinctive turns. High mountains, buildings, tunnels, viaducts, over or underpasses etc. also have a negative affect on the reception of GPS signals, which means that accuracy in calculating the position of the vehicle may decrease.

**(Q) The navigation system does not always calculate the fastest or shortest route.**

**(A)** When calculating a route, distance, width of road, type of road, number of right or left turns, roundabouts etc. are all taken into account in order to produce the best theoretical route. A more efficient selection of route may be possible based on experience and knowledge of the area.

**(Q) The navigation system uses toll roads, highways and ferries even though I chose to avoid them.**

**(A)** When calculating routes over longer distances, for technical reasons, the system can only use larger roads when calculating a route extending over a long distance. If *<NO>* is selected for toll roads and highways, they are avoided to the greatest possible extent and are only used if there is no other reasonable alternative.

**(Q) The position of the vehicle on the map is incorrect after transportation.**

**(A)** If the vehicle is transported, for example by ferry or train, or in such a way as to impede the reception of GPS signals, it can take up to five minutes before the position of the vehicle is correctly calculated.

**(Q) The position of the vehicle on the map is incorrect after the vehicle battery has been disconnected.**

**(A)** If power has been cut from the GPS antenna, it can take more than five minutes for the GPS signals to be received correctly and the position of the vehicle to be calculated.

**(Q) The map image does not correspond with the real situation.**

**(A)** Factors such as the constant expansion and rebuilding of the road network, new traffic regulations constantly being introduced etc. means that the digital map database is not always complete. The information stored in the maps is constantly being developed and updated. An Aston Martin Dealer can provide further information.

**(Q) The scale of the map sometimes changes.**

**(A)** Scale is affected by vehicle speed. At speeds over 87 mph the largest possible degree of magnification is 820 ft. Once speed decreases to 74.5 mph, the system is once again able to show all degrees of magnification. If no detailed map information is available, the degree of magnification automatically selected regardless of speed.

**(Q) The expected menu option is missing.**

**(A)** Look at the settings that have been made. Select *<Reset to default>* to restore the original settings.

**(Q) The system shows the route I am already on when I request *<Calculate new route>* or *<Detour>*.**

**(A)** The system cannot find a good alternative to the current route.

## TMC License Agreement

### End User Required Provisions: Aston Martin

Each Aston Martin navigation system map update capable to use and display the Traffic Data shall contain the following written information:

#### Real Time Traffic Information End-User Provisions

Certain Aston Martin models equipped with navigation have the capability to display real-time traffic information. If your system has this capability the following additional terms and conditions apply:

An End-User shall no longer have the right to use the Traffic Data in the event that the End-User is in material breach of the terms and conditions contained herein.

**[a]** - "Total Traffic Network, a division of Clear Channel Broadcasting, Inc. ("Total Traffic Network"), holds the rights to the traffic incident data and RDS-TMC network through which it is delivered. "You may not modify, copy, scan or use any other method to reproduce, duplicate, republish, transmit or distribute in any way any portion of traffic incident data. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold harmless Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc. and Clear Channel Broadcasting, Inc. (and their affiliates) against any and all claims, damages, costs or other expenses that arise directly or indirectly out of (a) your unauthorized use of the traffic incident data or the RDS-TMC network, (b) your violation of this directive and / or (c) any unauthorized or unlawful activities by you in connection herewith.

**[B]** - "Total Traffic Network traffic data is informational only. User assumes all risk of use. Total Traffic Network and its suppliers make no representations about content, traffic and road conditions, route usability, or speed."

**(Q) The vehicle symbol on screen jumps forwards or spins.**

**(A)** The navigation system may need a few seconds to sense the position and movement of the vehicle before driving off. Set both the navigation system and the engine to OFF. Start again, but stay stationary for a while before starting to drive.

**(Q) I'm going to make a long journey but I do not want to specify a special destination to the Cities I am thinking of travelling through. How do I most easily create an itinerary?**

**(A)** Specify the destination directly on the map using the hairline cross. The system automatically guides you to the final destination even though you are driving beside the intermediate destinations.

---

**[C]** - THE LICENSED MATERIAL IS PROVIDED TO LICENSEE “AS IS,” AND “WHERE IS”. TOTAL TRAFFIC NETWORK, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ANY AND ALL THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS OF ANY OF THE LICENSED MATERIAL, EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, ALL WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE LICENSED MATERIAL (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THAT THE LICENSED MATERIAL WILL BE ERROR-FREE, WILL OPERATE WITHOUT INTERRUPTION OR THAT THE TRAFFIC DATA WILL BE ACCURATE), EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, NON-INFRINGEMENT FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR THOSE ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING OR USAGE OF TRADE.

---

**[D]** - “NEITHER TOTAL TRAFFIC NETWORK NOR INRIX, INC. WILL BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST REVENUES, ANTICIPATED REVENUES, OR PROFITS RELATING TO THE SAME) ARISING FROM ANY CLAIM RELATING DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY TO USE OF THE TRAFFIC DATA, AND EVEN IF TOTAL TRAFFIC NETWORK, INRIX, INC., OR ASTON MARTIN ARE AWARE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. THESE LIMITATIONS APPLY TO ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, CLAIMS IN CONTRACT AND TORT (SUCH AS NEGLIGENCE, PRODUCT LIABILITY AND STRICT LIABILITY). SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THOSE PARTICULAR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

# Maintenance

|                                    |       |                                       |       |                            |       |
|------------------------------------|-------|---------------------------------------|-------|----------------------------|-------|
| Introduction .....                 | 11.2  | Brake Pad 'Bedding-in' .....          | 11.11 | Headlamp .....             | 11.34 |
| Vehicle Jacking .....              | 11.3  | Tires .....                           | 11.11 | Headlamp Alignment .....   | 11.35 |
| Servicing Precautions .....        | 11.3  | US Department of Transportation ..... | 11.13 | Other External Lamps ..... | 11.36 |
| Dangerous Substances .....         | 11.4  | Winter Tires .....                    | 11.19 | Trunk Lamps .....          | 11.37 |
| Emergency Items .....              | 11.4  | Tire Sealant Kit .....                | 11.19 | Internal Lamps .....       | 11.37 |
| Owner Maintenance .....            | 11.5  | Vehicle Recovery .....                | 11.21 | Door Window Reset .....    | 11.38 |
| Hood Release .....                 | 11.6  | Vehicle Battery .....                 | 11.23 | Front Seat Reset .....     | 11.38 |
| Fluid Levels .....                 | 11.7  | Vehicle Battery Charge .....          | 11.25 | Bodywork Maintenance ..... | 11.39 |
| Windshield Blade Replacement ..... | 11.10 | Battery Protection Mode .....         | 11.26 | Vehicle Cleaning .....     | 11.39 |
|                                    |       | Fuse Boxes .....                      | 11.28 | Vehicle Storage .....      | 11.42 |

## Introduction

Each item in the service schedules must be performed on time as failure to do so may void the new vehicle warranty or other warranties. It is the owner's responsibility to see that the vehicle is maintained correctly and in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedules.

Due to the sophistication of the various systems and the specialised equipment required to maintain this vehicle, owner maintenance should be restricted to the routine procedures described in this owner's guide.

If you think that this vehicle is not functioning correctly, please return it to an Aston Martin Dealer to be checked professionally.

### Restraint Systems

Aston Martin recommend that the inflatable (airbags) restraint systems and seat belt components installed to this vehicle are replaced at 10 (ten) year intervals from the date of manufacture on the certification label.

### Electronic Fuel Injection

**⚠ Warning: If the fuel system is allowed to run dry irreparable damage to the fuel pumps may occur.**

**⚠ Warning: Any modifications or additions to the fuel system not specifically designed by Aston Martin are prohibited. If carried out, they may cause damage to the fuel system which in some circumstances could result in fire. All Service Action Campaigns must be undertaken by an Aston Martin Dealer.**

The electronic fuel injection system requires special equipment and test facilities to set up and maintain so that the vehicle gives maximum performance coupled with economy, reliability and safe vehicle emissions. You are, therefore, strongly advised to entrust all service work to an Aston Martin Dealer.

### Parts and Lubricants

When undertaking a servicing task only parts, materials, lubricants, etc. that are specifically recommended by Aston Martin should be used. Failure to do so can result in damage to your vehicle and may invalidate your new vehicle warranty or other warranties (Refer to 'Aston Martin Warranty', page C.1).

**⚠ Your vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by the use of incorrect engine oil. Low quality or obsolete oils do NOT provide the protection required by modern, high performance engines. Failure to use engine oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increased pollution. It could also lead to engine failure.**

### Emission Warranty

The emission control systems installed to vehicles for certain markets are covered by a separate warranty. A statement of the provisions is given in the Warranty section of this Owner's Guide. You are advised to familiarise yourself with all warranty conditions at the earliest opportunity after taking delivery of your vehicle.

## Vehicle Jacking

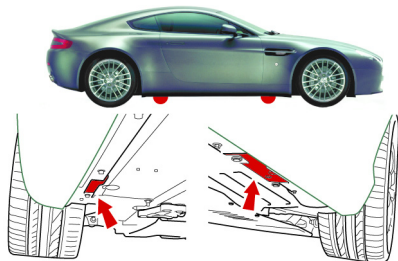
**⚠ Warning:** Make sure that no persons are in the vehicle before jacking commences.

**⚠ Warning:** Make sure that the park brake is ON and that the vehicle transmission is in first gear.

**⚠ Warning:** Make sure that the vehicle is parked on firm and level ground to give a secure base for the jack.

**⚠ Warning:** Do not raise the vehicle by placing a vehicle jack under the suspension arms.

If this vehicle is to be raised using a vehicle jack make sure that the following jacking points are used.



## Servicing Precautions

To avoid personal injury, the following safety precautions must be observed when the hood is open and the engine is operating or the ignition is ON.

**⚠ Warning:** Protect yourself against dangerous substances (Refer to 'Dangerous Substances', page 11.4).

**⚠ Warning:** Keep hands, hair, tools, items of clothing and jewelry clear of all drive belts, pulleys and operating mechanisms. The cooling fans may operate even though the engine is not operating.

**⚠ Warning:** Avoid skin contact with all exhaust system and engine components, engine fluids and escaping steam. They may be hot and will burn you.

**⚠ Warning:** Do not breathe exhaust fumes. Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide. Carbon monoxide is a dangerous gas, which is colorless and odorless and can cause unconsciousness and may be fatal. Never start or leave the engine running in an enclosed, unventilated area.

**⚠ Warning:** Do not work beneath the vehicle with a vehicle lifting jack as the only support. Place suitable stands under the vehicle.

**⚠ Warning:** Keep children and pets clear of the vehicle. Do not let anyone inside the vehicle unless specifically working to your instructions.

**⚠ Warning:** Whenever possible work in the engine compartment with the engine cool, the ignition OFF and the vehicle battery disconnected.

**⚠ Warning:** Petrol is highly flammable and, in confined spaces, is also explosive and toxic. In the event of spillage, set the engine to OFF, use no naked flame or light. Do not smoke. Do not inhale fumes.

## Dangerous Substances

**⚠ Warning:** *Dangerous substances should be kept out of reach of children.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Many liquids and other substances used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should under no circumstances be consumed and should, so far as possible, be kept from contact with the skin. These substances include battery electrolyte, antifreeze, oil, brake and clutch fluid, petrol, windshield washer additives, lubricants, refrigerant and various adhesives.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Particular care should be taken to avoid unnecessary contact with used engine oil. Always read carefully the instructions printed on labels or stamped on components and follow them carefully. Such instructions are included for reasons of your health and personal safety. Never disregard them.*

### Engine Oils

**⚠ Warning:** *Prolonged and repeated contact with used engine oils can cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer. Avoid excessive contact, wash thoroughly after contact. Keep out of reach of children. When your oil is changed, be sure that it is done by an experienced person. In addition, observe all laws regarding the disposal of waste oil and toxic fluids.*

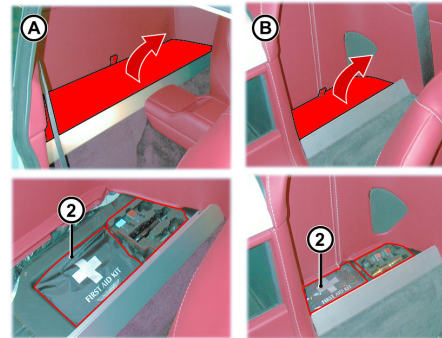
### Protect The Environment

**⚠ Warning:** *It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses, or soil. Use authorised waste disposal facilities, including civic amenity sites and garages providing facilities for receipt of used oil. If in doubt, contact your local authority for advice.*

## Emergency Items

**[1]** - Tire Sealant Kit (located in the trunk (not shown))(Refer to 'Tire Sealant Kit', page 11.19)

**[2]** - First Aid Kit<sub>1</sub>



**[A]** - Coupe

**[B]** - Roadster

<sub>1</sub>. Option.



## Owner Maintenance

In the interests of safety and reliability, it is advisable to carry out the following checks at the intervals suggested (more frequently if your vehicle is heavily used or operating in adverse conditions), and always before starting on a long journey. Refer to the following pages for advice and check procedures.

### Before Use Check:

- Operation of lamps, horn, indicators, wipers, washers and warning symbols
- Check there is sufficient fuel for the intended journey, particularly at night and before entering highways
- Operation of the seat belts
- Operation of the brakes
- Check for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle

### Weekly Checks

(daily if covering high mileage or touring)

- Tires
- Coolant level
- Brake fluid level
- Power steering level
- Operate Air Conditioning
- Windshield washer fluid level

- Check operation of windshield washers

### Fuel Filler Bowl

During fuel filling check that the fuel filler bowl drain pipe is free from debris which may block the pipe. If the pipe is blocked water can not drain from the bowl and can overflow into the fuel tank.

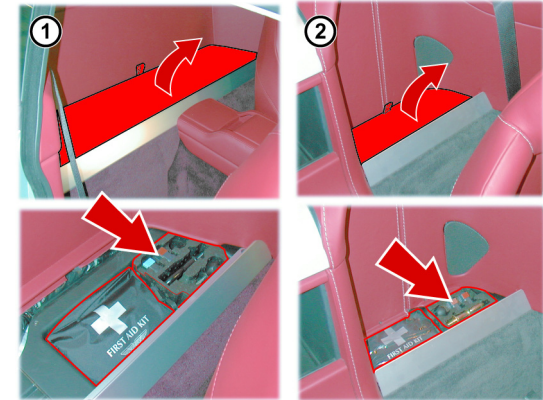
### Engine Oil Level

**! It is important to check the engine oil level regularly. Running the engine with engine oil below the lower mark or above the upper mark can cause serious engine damage.**

Check the engine oil level every fourth fuel tank fill or weekly - whichever is the sooner.

### Tool Kit

A vehicle tool kit is located in the interior rear left stowage compartment.



[1] - Coupe

[2] - Roadster

The tool kit consists of:

**Towing Eye** - (Refer to 'Vehicle Recovery', page 11.21).

**Screwdriver** - For the removal of the front license plate when installing the front towing eye.

**Road Wheel Lock Nut Socket** - For the removal of a road wheel(s) when servicing or maintenance is required<sup>1</sup>.

**Bulbs** - Main beam.

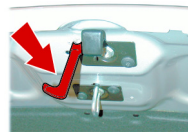
### Battery Conditioner

(Option)

(Refer to 'Battery Conditioner', page 11.25)

## Hood Release

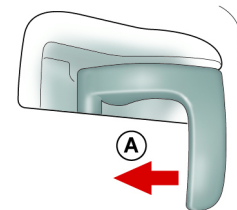
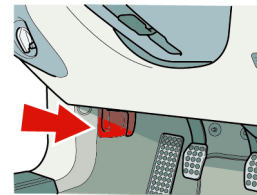
**⚠ Warning:** Do not pull on the hood secondary catch to assist in closing the hood. This may displace the hood secondary catch. If the catch is displaced it may not work correctly.



**⚠** Do not press down hard on the hood if it has not closed correctly. This may damage the hood.

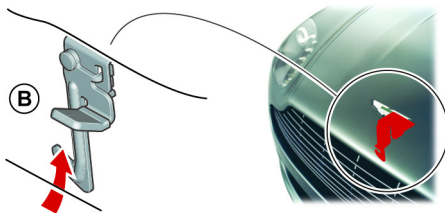
**⚠** Take care not unintentionally to pull on or catch the hood release lever.

To open the hood pull the lever (A (left front footwell)) to release the hood latch. The hood will rise but stay secured by the hood secondary catch.



<sup>1</sup>. Option.

Lift slightly on the hood front edge whilst pulling upward on the hood secondary catch (B) to release it. Lift the hood until fully open. The hood is held open by two gas struts.



If the windshield wipers are operating, they will temporarily rest in the park position while the hood is unlatched.

Before closing the hood, remove any tools, cleaning cloths, etc. from the engine compartment. Make sure that no one is obstructing the 'closing' area and that hands, clothing etc. are clear.

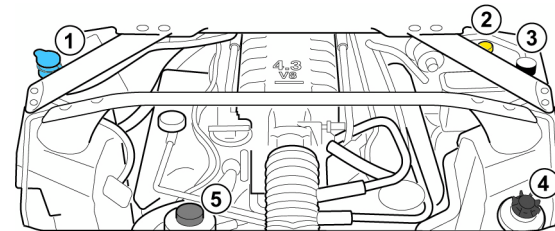
If the hood does not fully close or it opens during driving the message centre (right) will show BONNET OPEN.

To close the hood lower the hood until it starts to fall under its own weight. At that point let the hood fall to close.

If the hood does not shut, open the hood again and repeat the closure procedure, this time assist using light hand pressure as the hood falls.

## Fluid Levels

**Warning:** Engine components may be hot and could cause severe burns.



[1] - Washer fluid reservoir.

[2] - Brake fluid reservoir<sub>1</sub>.

[3] - Engine coolant reservoir.

[4] - Power steering fluid reservoir.

[5] - Engine oil filler cap and oil dipstick.

<sub>1</sub>. Changes sides for left and right hand drive.

## Windshield Wash Fluid Level

Top up as required. In winter, to prevent the windshield wash fluid freezing, increase the fluid concentration (refer to the manufacturers recommendations on the windshield wash fluid container).

When the level of windshield wash fluid is low an information message will show in the message centre (right) and the amber warning symbol will come ON.



Local or state regulations may restrict the use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs), which are commonly used as antifreeze agents in windshield washer fluid. A windshield washer fluid with limited VOC content should be used only if it provides adequate freeze resistance for all regions and climates in which the vehicle will be operated.

### Windshield Washer Jets

Washer jet housings are located on the rear edge of the hood. Each housing contains two washer jets.

Windshield washer jets are set during manufacture and should not need adjustment. However, if adjustment is required, adjust up or down so that the fluid strikes between a third and half way up the windshield.

## Brake Fluid Level

**⚠ Warning: Do not drive the vehicle if the brake fluid level is below the minimum mark.**

**⚠ Make sure that the brake fluid does not contact the paint work during the topping up operation. Serious paint work damage can result. If a spillage does occur, immediately flush any brake fluid from the paint work with clean, fresh water and then wipe with a clean damp cloth.**

Wipe the reservoir cap clean before removing to prevent ingress of contaminants.

The brake fluid level should read between the Min. and Max. marks.

1. Remove the reservoir cap. Top up to the Max. level.
2. Install the reservoir cap securely.



## Engine Coolant Level

**⚠ Warning: Do not remove the filler cap until the coolant system has cooled. Scalding can be caused by escaping steam or coolant.**

📖 Use a cloth or glove to protect hands and protect face and arms adequately.

1. Remove the pressure cap to check the coolant level. The correct coolant level is to the top of the reservoir tank. Top up with the correct antifreeze mix, if required (Refer to 'Fluids and Capacities', page 12.11).
2. Make sure that the filler cap is secure after topping up.

**⚠ Do not over tighten.**

If required to remove the pressure cap before the engine is cold, **use gloves or a protective cloth** and slowly loosen the pressure cap. Allow residual pressure to slowly drop. Continue to turn the pressure cap until it is released.



## Power Steering Fluid Level

**⚠ Make sure that the power steering fluid does not contact the paint work during topping up. Serious paint work damage can result. If a spillage does occur, immediately flush any power steering fluid from the paint work with clean fresh water, then wipe with a clean damp cloth.**

Always check the reservoir level when the engine is cold and with the front road wheels in the straight ahead position.

Wipe the reservoir cap clean before removing to prevent an ingress of contaminants.

1. Remove the reservoir cap and wipe the dipstick clean with a lint free cloth. Replace and remove again. The fluid level should read between the Min. and Max. marks.
2. If required, top up fluid level. **Do not overfill.**



## Engine Oil Level

**⚠ Warning: Engine oil or components may be hot and could cause severe burns.**

**⚠ Running the engine with engine oil below the lower mark or above the upper mark can cause serious engine damage.**

**⚠ This vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by the use of incorrect engine oil. Low quality or obsolete oils do NOT give the protection required by modern, high performance engines.**

**⚠ Failure to use engine oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increased pollution. It could also lead to engine failure (Refer to 'Fluids and Capacities', page 12.11).**

**⚠ Make sure that there is oil in the reservoir before the engine is started. Look for a sign of engine oil on the dipstick. Running the engine with no engine oil in the reservoir can cause serious engine damage.**

The vehicle should be on level ground.

Check the oil level when the engine is completely cold

Before starting the engine to check the oil level, remove the oil reservoir cap and wipe the dipstick clean with a lint free cloth.

Replace the cap fully tighten and then remove. Check that there is engine oil on the dipstick. If there is no oil on the dipstick top up the reservoir until oil registers on the dipstick. Replace the cap and fully tighten.

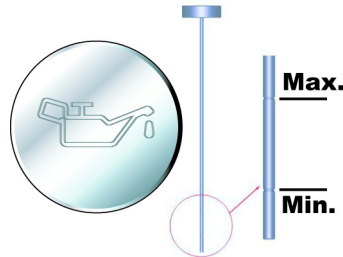
#### **Oil level check:**

 *Oil will expand when hot. For an accurate check, check the engine oil level when the engine is cold.*

1. Operate the engine at 1500 - 2000 rpm for 20 seconds then set the engine to OFF.
2. Wait 30 seconds then remove the oil reservoir cap and wipe the dipstick clean with a lint free cloth. Replace the cap and fully tighten.
3. Remove the cap again - avoid contact with the sides of the tank. If the level is below Max., top up to the Max. mark with the recommended engine oil.

 *Min. to Max. is 2 quart.*

4. Repeat from step 1 to check the level.

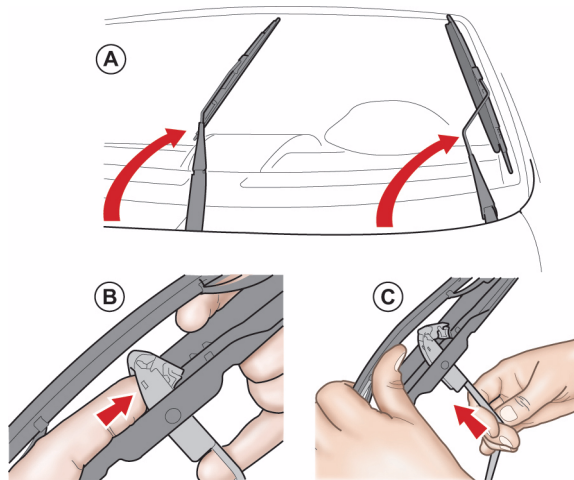


## Windshield Blade Replacement

To replace the windshield wiper blades the wiper arms must be set at 90° to the vehicle (A).

1. Press and hold in buttons 2 and 6 (Infotainment keypad). Insert the vehicle key in the ignition control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON). This will manoeuvre the wiper blade arms to the 90° position. Return the vehicle key to position '0'.
2. Lift the wiper arm(s) up and remove the worn wiper blade(s). Install the new wiper blade(s) and lower the wiper arm(s).
3. After replacing the wiper blade either:
  - Move the vehicle key back through to position 'II' to lower the wiper arms. Return the vehicle key to position '0' or remove
  - Operate the wiper stalk - the wiper arms will complete the request and then park

## Brake Pad 'Bedding-in'



**! Failure to 'bed-in' new brake pads will result in reduced brake performance and possible brake judder or squeal.**

After the installation of new brake pads, brake performance will be reduced, as the brake discs and pads need to be 'Bedded-in'. For the first few hundred miles of new brake pad use, avoid excessive braking (hard stops from high speed, alpine descents, etc.).

## Tires

Tires of the correct type, manufacturer and dimensions, with correct cold inflation pressures are an integral part of every vehicle's design. Regular maintenance of tires contributes not only to safety, but to the designed function of the vehicle.

Road holding, steering and braking are especially vulnerable to incorrectly pressurised, badly installed or worn tires.

Tires of the correct size and type, but of different make have widely varying characteristics.

Only install tires approved by Aston Martin.

### Tire Pressures

Make sure that correct tire pressures are carefully maintained. Road holding, steering, braking and tire wear are especially vulnerable to incorrect tire pressures.

Check tire pressures regularly and before starting any journey. Re-inflate any tire with a low pressure at the earliest opportunity.

Pressures increase slightly when the tires are hot. For an accurate reading, pressures should be checked when the tires are cold. After adjusting the tire pressures, make sure that the valve caps are securely replaced to provide an additional air seal and to prevent the ingress of dirt.

### Tire Service

The recommended tires for this vehicle are asymmetrical and must be installed to the wheel with the tire mark ‘Outside’ on the outside of the wheel rim.

They are also of different sizes on the front and rear axles, therefore complete wheels cannot be swapped between axles. Complete wheels can, however, be swapped from side to side on the same axle.

 *Because of the high performance potential of this vehicle, Aston Martin strongly recommend replacement of any damaged or worn tire.*

### Damage

Tires should be examined at regular intervals for wear and damage. Inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, i.e. bulges in the tread or the sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or the sidewalls. If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional.

Stones or other objects which have become lodged in the tire treads should be carefully removed.

### Flat Spots

It is a characteristic of high performance tires that temporary ‘flat spots’ may develop if the vehicle is left standing in high or low ambient temperatures for any length of time.

These ‘flat spots’ will manifest themselves as minor vibrations when the vehicle is first driven from cold. As the tires warm up to operating temperature, normal tire shape should be restored and the vibrations cease. If vibrations persist, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

### Age

Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. It is recommended that tires generally be replaced after five years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process.

 *Local regulations on tire life may apply.*

### New Tires

New tires should not be installed to the front wheels in combination with worn rear tires, as rear end stability will be affected. When new tires are required consult your Aston Martin Dealer for advice if the rear tires are also worn. Each wheel and tire unit must be balanced dynamically and measured for Radial Force Variation (RFV)<sub>1</sub> to make sure of efficient steering, optimum tire wear and maximum ride comfort. Because of the potentially high speeds, it is essential that wheel balancing is carried out when new tires are installed.

---

<sup>1</sup>. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer for more information.



### Running-In New Tires

When new tires have been installed, speed should be limited, particularly during the first 50 mph or so of driving. Fast cornering, hard braking, and harsh acceleration should also be avoided during this period.

### Tread Wear Marks

Tread wear marks (A) are incorporated into the construction of all tires. These marks are integral moulded ribs spaced at regular intervals around the circumference of the tire and extend across the full width of the tread, in all primary grooves.

When a tire has worn causing one or more of the marks to be flush with the outer face of the tread the tire has reached its wear limit. It then becomes illegal in certain countries and must be replaced.



## US Department of Transportation

### Uniform Tire Quality Grades

The following information relates to the tire grading system developed by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, which grades tires by tread wear, traction and temperature performance. All passenger vehicle tires must conform to federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

#### Tread Wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of a tire tested, under controlled conditions, on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half times ( $1\frac{1}{2}$ ) as well, on the government course, as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the normal due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

#### Traction

**⚠ Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

#### Temperature

**⚠ Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is correctly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.**

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

### Tire Sidewall Information

Both US and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and incase of a recall.

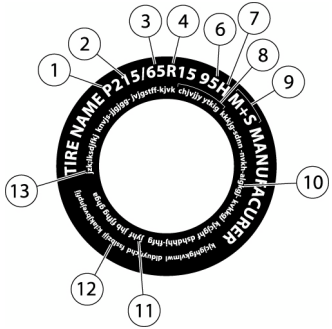
### Information on 'P' Type Tires

'P215/65R15 95H' is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below.

 *The tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.*

**[1] P** - A tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

 *If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).*



**[2] 215** - The nominal width of the tire in millimeters from side wall edge to side wall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

**[3] 65** - The aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

**[4] R** - Shows a "radial" type tire.

**[5] 15** - The wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

**[6] 95** - The tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your Owner's Guide. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

 *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

**[7] H -** The tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 186 mph. These ratings are listed in the following chart.

| Letter Rating | Speed Rating |
|---------------|--------------|
| M             | 81 mph       |
| N             | 87 mph       |
| Q             | 99 mph       |
| R             | 106 mph      |
| S             | 112 mph      |
| T             | 118 mph      |
| U             | 124 mph      |
| H             | 130 mph      |
| V             | 149 mph      |
| W             | 168 mph      |
| Y             | 186 mph      |

 For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph, tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph, tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

**[8] TIRE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (TIN) -** (Also known as 'DOT Code') The Tire Identification Number (TIN) begins with the letters 'DOT' and shows that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

#### **[9] TIRE TYPE -**

- M+S or M/S  
Mud and Snow
- AT  
All Terrain
- AS  
All Season.

**[10] TIRE PLY COMPOSITION AND MATERIAL USED -** Shows the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must show the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

**[11] MAXIMUM LOAD -** Shows the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

**[12] TREAD WEAR, TRACTION AND TEMPERATURE GRADES -**  
(Refer to page 11.13).

**[13] MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE INFLATION PRESSURE -** (Refer to page 11.17)

Vehicle Loading

Correctly loading this vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading this vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining the vehicle’s weight ratings from the vehicle’s Safety Compliance Certification Label (A (USA) (B (Canada))).

**A**

MFD BY ASTON MARTIN LAGONDA LTD  
WARWICKSHIRE, ENGLAND

MFD DATE                      GVWR    5300  
GAWR F    2475                      R    3005

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE  
FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY, BUMPER  
AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN  
EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE

VEHICLE IDENT.No.

PASSENGER CAR  
AD43-973407-AA

**B**

MFD BY ASTON MARTIN LAGONDA LTD  
WARWICKSHIRE, ENGLAND

MFD DATE                      GVWR    2410  
GAWR F/AV    1125                      R/AR    1365

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE  
STANDARDS PRESCRIBED UNDER THE CANADIAN  
MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY REGULATIONS IN EFFECT  
ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE.

CE VÉHICULE EST CONFORME À TOUTES LES NORMES  
QUI LUI SONT APPLICABLES EN VERTU DU RÈGLEMENT  
SUR LA SÉCURITÉ DES VÉHICULES AUTOMOBILES DU  
CANADA EN VIGUEUR À LA DATE DE SA FABRICATION.

VEHICLE IDENT.No.

TYPE PCVT                      AD43-973408-AA

**MFD Date** - Month and Year the vehicle was manufactured (e.g. 01 / 06 = January 2006)

**GVWR** - Gross vehicle weight (curb weight + full payload)

**GAWR F** - Maximum load on the front axle

**GAWR R** - Maximum load on the rear axle  
or the Tire label (C).

**C**

**TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION**  
**RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT**

|                                      |         |                    |                     |
|--------------------------------------|---------|--------------------|---------------------|
| SEATING CAPACITY<br>NOMBRE DE PLACES | TOTAL 4 | FRONT 2<br>AVANT 2 | REAR 2<br>ARRIERE 2 |
|--------------------------------------|---------|--------------------|---------------------|

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 410 kg or 902 lbs.  
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 410 kg ou 902 lbs.

|                     |                        |                                                  |
|---------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| TIRE<br>PNEU        | SIZE<br>DIMENSIONS     | COLD TIRE PRESSURE<br>PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID |
| FRONT<br>AVANT      | 245/40<br>ZR20         | 250 kPa (36 PSI)                                 |
| REAR<br>ARRIERE     | 295/35<br>ZR20         | 260 kPa (38 PSI)                                 |
| SPARE<br>DE SECOURS | NONE<br>NON DISPONIBLE |                                                  |

SEE OWNER'S MANUAL  
FOR ADDITIONAL  
INFORMATION  
VOIR LE MANUEL  
DE L'USAGER  
POUR PLUS DE  
RENSEIGNEMENTS

AD43-69014-BA

**Seating Capacity** - Shows the maximum number of passengers.

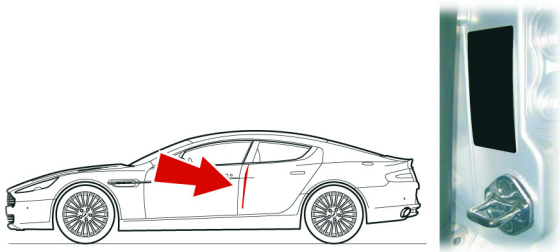
**Payload** - Make sure that the payload (cargo + passengers) does not exceed this limit.

**Tire sizes** - The size of tires to be used on this vehicle.

**Cold inflation pressure** - The maximum recommended tire inflation pressure.

 The illustrations shown are examples and may not accurately describe the labels on this vehicle.

Both labels are located on the vehicle door opening edge.



**Payload** - The payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the edge of the driver's door. Look for 'The Combined Weight of Occupants and Cargo Should Never Exceed XXX kg OR XXX lb' for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any after market or Aston Martin Dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

#### Gross Vehicle Weight

The maximum recommended weight for a vehicle, including: the weight of the vehicle itself, fuel and other fluids, passengers, and all cargo.

#### Determining the Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement 'The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb' on the vehicle's tire label.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in the vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the 'XXX' amount equals 661 lb and there will be four 150 lb passengers in the vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 61 lb ( $661 - 600 (4 \times 150) = 61$  lb). In metric units ( $300 - 272 (4 \times 68) = 28$  kg.).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

#### Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure

The maximum permissible inflation pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and / or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

 *The recommended cold inflation tire pressures for this vehicle can also be found in the specifications chapter of this owner's guidebook (Refer to 'Tires', page 12.7)*

#### Safety Practices

**⚠ Warning:** *If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.*

**⚠ Warning:** *Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph. The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.*

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

### Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important. If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you can not detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

### Tire Terminology

**Tire Label** - A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

**Tire Identification Number (TIN)** - A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

**Inflation Pressure** - A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

**Standard Load** - A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35psi [37psi (2.5bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

**Extra Load** - A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41psi [43psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

**kPa** - Kilo pascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

**PSI** - Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

**Cold Inflation Pressure** - The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sun light for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile.

**Recommended Inflation Pressure** - - The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label (found on the edge of the driver's door).

**Bead Area of the Tire** - Area of the tire next to the rim.

**Sidewall of the Tire** - - Area between the bead area and the tread.

**Tread Area of the Tire** - Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

**Rim** - The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

## Winter Tires

The tires installed as original equipment are designed with a rubber compound, tread pattern and width specially suited for high speeds in normal road conditions, but they are less suitable during extremes of low temperatures, snow and ice. The use of winter tires will considerably improve handling during these conditions.

Only use Aston Martin approved winter tires.

**⚠ Warning: Maximum speed with winter tires is 168 mph.**

Winter tires must be used in vehicle sets, that is, installed on all four wheels. Do not exceed the tire speed rating when using winter tires. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

## Snow Chains

**⚠ Warning: The maximum speed when using snow chains is 30 mph. Remove the snow chains immediately the roads are clear of snow**

These are available from your Aston Martin Dealer for temporary use when driving in heavy snow conditions. Snow chains should only be installed to the rear (driven) wheels.

 Make sure that the installation instructions supplied with the snow chains are kept in a safe place.

## Tire Sealant Kit

**⚠ Warning: Do not use the system to seal a tire that was damaged while driving with insufficient air pressure (e.g. tire cuts, cracks, bumps or similar damage). Do not use the system to seal tires with side wall damage. Only punctures in the tread area of tires may be sealed.**

**⚠ Warning: Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is pumping. Watch the side wall of the tire. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage set the compressor to OFF. The journey should not be continued. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.**

**⚠ Warning: If a tire pressure of 1.8 bar cannot be reached then the tire can not be sealed. Do not attempt to re-inflate the tire. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.**

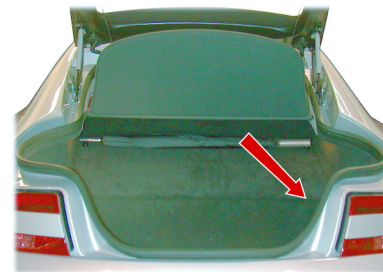
**⚠ Warning: If the pressure in the tire after driving for 2 mile is below 1.3 bar the tire has not been effectively sealed. The journey should not be continued. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.**

**⚠ Warning: After a longer period of rest, the tire pressure should be rechecked.**

**⚠ The tire sealant kit only provides temporary mobility. Always refer to local laws and regulations on the use and repair of tires that have been treated with any form of temporary mobility aid. Consult a tire specialist for advice.**

 Inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.

## Location



## Operation

Remove the tire sealant kit from its location in the trunk. Follow the instructions detailed on the lid.

Read the following instructions and warnings carefully before using the tire sealant kit. Compliance with these instructions is vital to make sure of vehicle and user safety. Noncompliance with these instructions means risking severe tire damage and hazardous vehicle behavior which can lead to a road accident involving damage to property or injury to persons.

- Make sure that the vehicle is parked far enough from traffic so that there is no danger from passing vehicles and so that you do not disrupt the traffic. Warn other vehicles using the warning triangle
- The system should only be used between temperatures of – 40°F and 158°F
- A maximum speed of 50 mph may not be exceeded at any time after sealing the tire with the system
- The system provides only a **temporary emergency repair** for continuing the journey up to 125 mile or to the nearest Aston Martin Dealer

- If the nearest Aston Martin Dealer is over a 125 mile away arrange for collection under the Aston Martin Emergency Service scheme
- The system will effectively seal a tire that was punctured by an object with a diameter of up to 0.25 in. It is possible that a tire, especially with greater damage, will not be sealed. Do not remove objects that punctured the tire if they are still lodged in the tire
- The sealant bottle needs to be exchanged before it expires. **Do not** use the system after the expiry date on the sealant bottle or casing has been reached. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer
- Do not attempt to inflate other objects without using a system adapter and do not inflate objects with a volume greater than 50 liter (air mattresses, rubber boats, etc.). Do not let the system pump air for more than 10 minutes without stopping it and allowing it to cool down

Both the hose and the bottle of sealant need to be replaced after using the system. Sealant deposits in a used hose may cause the system to operate incorrectly. New bottles of sealant can be purchased from your Aston Martin Dealer.

Dispose of empty sealant bottles together with normal household waste.

Remains of liquid sealant must be handed over to your dealer or disposed of in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.



## Vehicle Recovery

⚠ **When moving the vehicle by transporter make sure that the vehicle is not strapped down to the transporter by the suspension control arms.**

⚠ **Power braking and power steering are not available with the engine OFF. Substantially higher brake pedal pressures and steering effort are required.**

⚠ **If there is a transmission fault, this vehicle must be transported.**

Your vehicle should always be recovered on a vehicle transporter<sup>1</sup> and should only be towed for **short distances**, for example, if it is causing an obstruction or if it requires winching onto a transporter. If the park brake was applied and the vehicle has lost power, the park brake will not release. Call Aston Martin assistance.

---

<sup>1</sup> The recommended method for a recovering vehicle is to have it transported in a purpose built, covered, vehicle transporter.

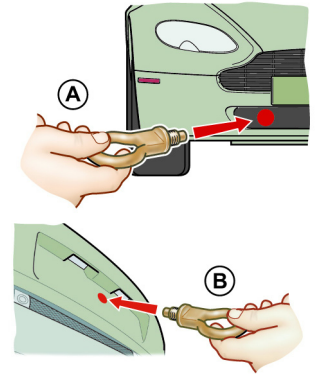
**SportShift Transmission Only** - If the transmission is in neutral then first gear will be selected at ignition OFF. If the transmission is in first or reverse gear, the transmission will stay in the selected gear at ignition OFF. To enable neutral to be selected at ignition OFF, set the ignition to ON then press and release the neutral button twice, or pull back and release the gear shift paddles twice, before the ignition is set to OFF. An audible warning will sound three times while the message centre (right) will show GEARBOX IN NEUTRAL and APPLY PARK BRAKE.

If moving the vehicle in such a situation:

1. Remove the towing eye from its storage location in the vehicle tool kit and install it to the exposed female threads (A) front, (B) rear<sup>2</sup>.

Protect vehicle paint work when installing the towing eye.

2. Put the transmission into neutral. Move the vehicle key to position 'II' (ignition ON) to release the steering lock.
3. When being towed use the footbrake very gently as required to prevent excessive slack in the tow rope.



---

<sup>2</sup> The towing eye has a left hand thread.

## Jump Start From Another Vehicle

**⚠ Warning:** *The donor vehicle must have a 12 volt battery and a negative (-), black earth terminal to make sure that the correct battery polarity is maintained.*

**⚠** *Apart from vehicle recovery, this vehicle must not be driven if the vehicle battery is incapable of starting the engine. In this case the vehicle battery must be replaced.*

**⚠** *If the voltage or earth of the donor vehicle is different or not known, do not attempt starting in the way described.*

If this vehicle will not start due to a discharged battery, it may be started, **for vehicle recovery**, by connecting the battery from another vehicle (donor) to this vehicle (recipient).

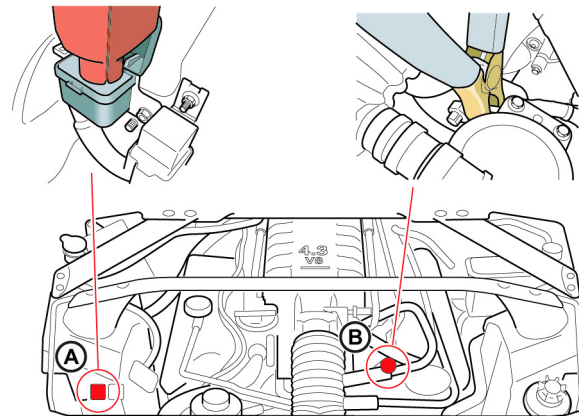
### Jump Start Procedure

**⚠** *Remove rings, metal watch bands and any other jewelry.*

**⚠** *Set all electrical motors and ancillaries in both vehicles to OFF.*

**⚠** *Set all lamps to OFF except those needed to protect vehicles or illuminate the work area.*

1. Position the vehicles so that the connecting cables will reach into the recipient engine bay. Apply the park brake and set the ignition to OFF.
2. Access the jump start terminal in the **recipient** engine bay.
3. Connect the positive (red) cable between the positive (red) terminal of the donor battery and the jump start terminal of the **recipient** vehicle (A).
4. Connect the negative (black) cable between the negative (black) terminal of the donor battery and a good earth (negative) point in the recipient engine bay (B).
5. Start the donor vehicle engine and run at about 1500 – 2000 rpm.



## Vehicle Battery

6. Start the engine of the **recipient** vehicle.
7. Once both vehicles are running remove the jump start cables, first the negative (black) cable from both vehicles and then the positive (red) cable from both vehicles.

Allow the recipient engine to run until the discharged battery is sufficiently recharged (15 to 20 minutes) to start the engine without assistance. Set to OFF and restart the recipient engine. Take the vehicle on a long run to fully charge the battery.

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer to have the battery checked or replaced.

 Recharge time will depend on the initial 'state of health' of discharged battery.

 If this vehicle will not start consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

 **Warning: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.**

 **Warning: Do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always have sufficient ventilation.**

 **Warning: When lifting a plastic cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury, damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**

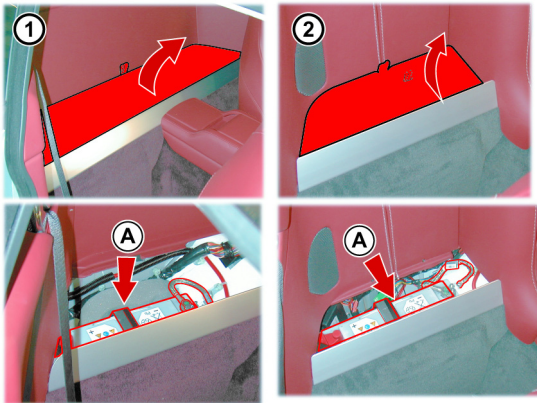
 **Warning: Keep batteries out of reach of children.**

 **Warning: Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, get medical help immediately.**

 **The engine must never be run with the vehicle battery disconnected.**

 **Apart from vehicle recovery, this vehicle must not be driven if the vehicle battery is incapable of starting the engine. In this case the vehicle battery must be replaced. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.**

The vehicle battery is maintenance free and should only require checking by your Aston Martin Dealer during regular vehicle services. To access the vehicle battery remove the trim panel (A), located in the right rear environment.



[1] - Coupe

[2] - Roadster

## Vehicle Battery Disposal

It is the responsibility of the vehicle owner when disposing of automotive batteries to do it in an environmentally correct manner. The incorrect disposal of a vehicle (lead-acid) battery can be extremely hazardous to health and the environment. Most batteries contain heavy metals and when disposed of incorrectly, these heavy metals may leak into the ground. This can contribute to soil and water pollution and endanger wildlife.

Follow your local authorised standards for disposal. Call your local authorised recycling centre to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.

Do not dispose of your vehicle battery in the household waste.



## Warnings

The following warnings are located on the vehicle battery.



## Vehicle Battery Charge

Various systems, for example, the clock, security systems and Infotainment centre system continue to drain battery power even with the ignition OFF.

A **new fully charged** battery has the ability to start this vehicle, if left unused, for up to 45 days without a battery conditioner being used.

 In cold climates this time may be reduced.

 Aston Martin recommend that if this vehicle is to be left unused for ten (10) days or more a battery conditioner (mains power available) should be used.

Battery charge can be drained excessively in a number of ways:

- If the vehicle is unused for long periods of time
- If the vehicle is used regularly but only for short journeys, e.g. less than 30 mile a journey
- If electrical systems are in use without the vehicle engine running
- If the vehicle key is left in the ignition control for long periods of time without the engine operating

Excessive battery drain would ultimately mean that the battery would not be able to start the engine.

## Battery Conditioner

(Option)

 **Warning: Do not attempt to start the vehicle with a battery conditioner connected to the mains supply.**

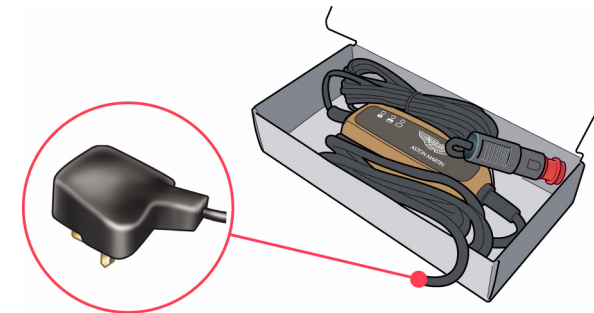
 **Warning: Do not smoke. Prevent flames and sparks. Explosive gasses are given off by batteries during charging.**

 **A battery conditioner is designed for conditioning of partially or fully charged batteries. It will not effectively charge a discharged battery.**

 **For indoor use only. Disconnect mains supply before making or breaking battery connections.**

 The battery conditioner supplied with the vehicle is suitable for use on all types of 12 volt lead acid batteries.

If this vehicle is not going to be used for a period of time, and **mains power is available**, use a battery conditioner to maintain the battery charge level.



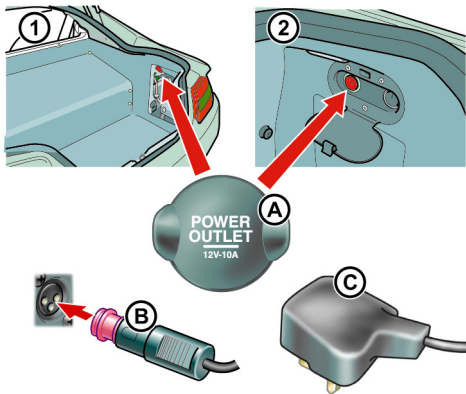
When connected the battery conditioner will maintain a small trickle charge to keep the battery in a fully charged state. The battery conditioner may be left in this state indefinitely.

### To Connect a Battery Conditioner

1. Insert the accessory socket plug (B) into the accessory socket (A (located in the trunk right side)).
2. Insert the mains plug (C) into the mains supply.

3. Gently close, but do not latch, the trunk lid. This avoids possible damage to the trunk lid water seal from the battery conditioner power cable.

 *With the trunk lid left open the vehicle doors can be locked and armed.*



**[1]** - Coupe

**[2]** - Roadster

To remove the battery conditioner first disconnect from the mains supply, then from the vehicle socket.

## Battery Protection Mode

 ***Replace the battery as soon as possible, if the battery is not capable of starting the engine.***

Using the vehicle electrical systems, i.e. the infotainment system, with the vehicle key at position 'I' (ignition OFF) will drain the battery charge. Eventually the battery will drain to such a low level that it will not start the engine.

To avoid this happening, a series of safety mechanisms shut down nonessential electrical systems before excessive battery drain takes place.

### FAQ

**What is the first sign of battery protection mode?**

**[A]** - WARNING - LOW BATTERY (For 10 seconds).

**[B]** - LOW BATTERY



### What should I do next?

Set all unnecessary electrical systems to OFF to reduce battery drain. Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

### What happens if I ignore the warning messages?

After approximately two to ten minutes (dependent on the rate of battery charge drain) the following messages will show:

**[A] - INFOTAINMENT WILL BE SHUT DOWN 2 MINUTES** (For 10 seconds).

**[B] - LOW BATTERY POWER SAVE.**

If the audio system is ON the sound will mute for 10 seconds and a short 'Beep' will be heard when the message is first shown.

### What should I do if these messages are shown?

Set all unnecessary electrical systems to OFF. Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

### What happens if I ignore second warning messages?

The infotainment system will shut down in two minutes. No other electrical system will be shut down. This significantly reduces the rate of battery drain. The following functionality will be lost:

- CD Player
- Navigation System
- Radio Tuner

### What should I do if the infotainment system shuts down?

Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

The infotainment system will not operate without the engine running until the battery has regained its charge. With the engine running the infotainment system will start up.

### What is a reasonable length of time to run the engine?

The vehicle battery normally requires a journey of approximately 30 mile to recharge. Additionally, use the battery conditioner to restore the vehicle battery charge.

### What if I cannot restart the engine?

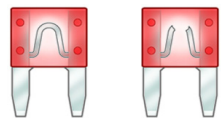
If the battery has been run down to a point where it will not start the engine then an external battery charger<sup>1</sup> will be required or your vehicle will require a 'jump start' (Refer to 'Jump Start From Another Vehicle', page 11.22).

<sup>1</sup> A battery conditioner is designed for conditioning of partially or fully charged batteries. It will not effectively charge a discharged battery.

# Fuse Boxes

The electrical system is protected by fuses. If any lamps, accessories, or controls don't work, inspect the appropriate circuit protector.

If a fuse has blown, the inside element will be melted. If the same fuse blows again, avoid using that system and consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible.

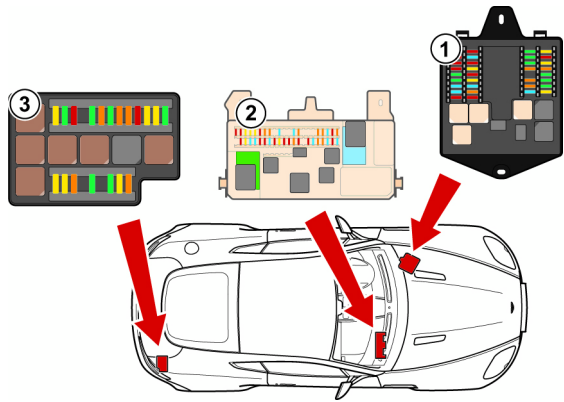


## Fuse Box Location

[1] - Engine bay fuse box (passenger side).

[2] - Cabin fuse box (passenger footwell).

[3] - Trunk fuse box (Coupe: right side of trunk) - (Roadster: left side of trunk).



## Fuses

### Engine Bay Fuses

| Fuse | Rating | Function                                                            |
|------|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F1   | 10A    | Not available                                                       |
| F2   | 10A    | Aston Martin Tracking system / Clock                                |
| F3   | 10     | Cooling fan module                                                  |
| F4   | 20A    | Engine management (PCM)                                             |
| F5   | 20A    | Not available                                                       |
| F6   | 15A    | Not available                                                       |
| F7   | 15A    | Not available                                                       |
| F8   | 10A    | Engine coolant level sensor / Valve electric vapor management (VEM) |
| F9   | 20A    | Not available                                                       |
| F10  | 10A    | Air conditioner compressor clutch                                   |



**Engine Bay Fuses**

| Fuse | Rating | Function                                                                                                     |
|------|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F11  | 15A    | Horn                                                                                                         |
| F12  | 10A    | Keep alive power (PCM)                                                                                       |
| F13  | 20A    | Fuel injectors                                                                                               |
| F14  | 10A    | Exhaust gas re-circulation module                                                                            |
| F15  | 25A    | Starter motor solenoid                                                                                       |
| F16  | 15A    | Ignition coils / suppressors                                                                                 |
| F17  | 5A     | Glove box release solenoid                                                                                   |
| F18  | 15A    | Exhaust Gas Oxygen (HEGO) sensors / Catalyst monitor sensor (CMS) / Variable camshaft timing solenoids (VCT) |
| F19  | 40A    | ABS module / Battery feed                                                                                    |
| F20  | 20A    | ABS module / Battery feed                                                                                    |
| F21  |        | Blank                                                                                                        |

**Engine Bay Fuses**

| Fuse | Rating | Function                                                                                    |
|------|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F22  | 5A     | Mass airflow sensor (left and right side) / Secondary air injection solenoid                |
| F23  |        | Blank                                                                                       |
| F24  | 5A     | Alternator warning lamp                                                                     |
| F25  | 5A     | Not available                                                                               |
| F26  | 20A    | Headlamp wash pump                                                                          |
| F27  | 25A    | Not available                                                                               |
| F28  | 10A    | ABS Module / Steering angle sensor / Vehicle key reader / Fuel tank leakage diagnostic pump |
| F29  | 25A    | Not available                                                                               |
| F30  | 5A     | Battery sensing                                                                             |
| F31  |        | Blank                                                                                       |
| F32  | 30A    | Windshield wiper motor (slow) / Alternator                                                  |

Engine Bay Fuses

| Fuse | Rating | Function                      |
|------|--------|-------------------------------|
| F33  | 30A    | Windshield wiper motor (Fast) |
| F34  | 20A    | Heater Blower motor           |
| F35  | 60A    | Cooling fan module            |

Cabin Fuses

| Fuse | Rating | Function                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F43  | 15A    | Multi media module display / GPS tuner (if installed on your vehicle (not Middle East)) / Media player                                                                               |
| F44  | 10A    | Airbag module                                                                                                                                                                        |
| F45  | 15A    | Not available                                                                                                                                                                        |
| F46  | 5A     | Driver Information / Master lamp switch / Glove box relay / Master lock switch / Trunk lid release / Engine bay fuse box / Hands-free phone / CCM Switcher / Convertible roof module |
| F47  | 5A     | Interior lamps (front / footwell) / Seat switches / Glovebox release / Fuel Flap release / Trunk accessory (illumination) socket / Garage door opener                                |
| F48  | 15A    | Windshield washer relay and pump                                                                                                                                                     |
| F49  | 10A    | Airbag module                                                                                                                                                                        |

**Cabin Fuses**

| Fuse | Rating | Function                                                                                 |
|------|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F51  | 15A    | Diagnostic ports / Centre stack switches                                                 |
| F52  | 5A     | Ignition control / Aston Martin Tracking system                                          |
| F53  | 10A    | Not available                                                                            |
| F54  | 10A    | Engine fuse box / Trunk fuse box / Tire pressure sensing / Secondary air induction relay |
| F55  | 20A    | Cabin accessory socket (Cigar lighter)                                                   |
| F56  | 10A    | Centre console module / Sounder module / Hazard switch                                   |
| F57  | 15A    | Diagnostic ports / Brake pedal switch                                                    |
| F58  | 10A    | Headlamp (right side) / Headlamp (main beam) level module                                |
| F59  | 10A    | Headlamp (left side)                                                                     |
| F60  | 15A    | Drivers seat                                                                             |
| F61  | 15A    | Passenger seat                                                                           |

**Cabin Fuses**

| Fuse | Rating | Function                                                                             |
|------|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F62  | 20A    | Air conditioning module                                                              |
| F63  | 20A    | Not available                                                                        |
| F64  | 5A     | AM / FM receiver module / Traffic monitoring control (TMC) receiver                  |
| F65  | 5A     | Media player / Multi media module and display / Antenna amplifiers / Audio amplifier |
| F66  | 10A    | Centre console module / Infotainment control module                                  |

| Cabin Fuses |        |                                                                                           |
|-------------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fuse        | Rating | Function                                                                                  |
| F67         | 15A    | Not available                                                                             |
| F68         | 5A     | Hands-free phone module                                                                   |
| F69         | 5A     | Convertible roof module                                                                   |
| F73         | 5A     | Not available                                                                             |
| F74         | 15A    | Fuel pump                                                                                 |
| F77         | 15A    | Trunk power socket                                                                        |
| F79         | 5A     | Reversing lamps / Parking assist module /Garage door opener / Reverse switch (SportShift) |

| Cabin Fuses |        |                                                                 |
|-------------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fuse        | Rating | Function                                                        |
| F80         | 5A     | Not available                                                   |
| F81         | 20A    | Ignition control                                                |
| F82         | 25A    | Passenger door module                                           |
| F83         | 25A    | Driver door module                                              |
| F84         | 25A    | Passenger seat power and switches                               |
| F85         | 25A    | Driver seat power and switches                                  |
| F86         | 5A     | Ignition control / Driver and passenger seats / Engine fuse box |

**Trunk Fuses**

| Fuse | Rating | Function                                 |
|------|--------|------------------------------------------|
| F1   | 15A    | Tonneau lid latch (Roadster)             |
| F2   | 20A    | Cubby box accessory socket (Roadster)    |
| F3   | 30A    | Heated rear windshield                   |
| F4   | 20A    | Not available                            |
| F5   | 30A    | Audio amplifier                          |
| F6   | 5A     | Not available                            |
| F7   | 5A     | Not available                            |
| F8   | 30A    | SportShift transmission - Hydraulic pump |
| F9   | 30A    | Fuel pump module                         |
| F10  | 30A    | Convertible roof module (Roadster)       |
| F11  | 20A    | Tonneau lid module (Roadster)            |

**Trunk Fuses**

| Fuse | Rating | Function                             |
|------|--------|--------------------------------------|
| F12  | 20A    | SportShift transmission module       |
| F13  | 10A    | SportShift transmission module       |
| F14  | 5A     | Parking assist module                |
| F15  | 5A     | Not available                        |
| F16  | 30A    | Convertible roof pump                |
| F17  | 5A     | Trunk lamps                          |
| F18  | 30A    | Audio amplifier                      |
| F20  | 20A    | Tonneau lid module                   |
| F21  | 30A    | Not available                        |
| F22  | 20A    | Exhaust bypass valve and vacuum pump |

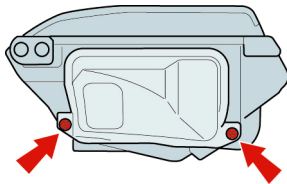
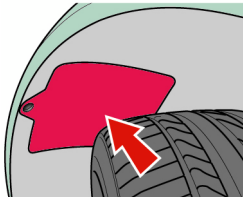
## Headlamp

 *Headlamp Units: Condensation: The headlamp units will generate condensation under certain conditions. However, this should clear after approximately 10 minutes.*

### Bulb Access

Access to the headlamp bulbs is through a panel in each wheel arch liner. Turn the steering to the opposite lock from the headlamp unit with the defective bulb. Using a flat blade, i.e. a screwdriver or a small coin, release the screw on the access panel and remove the panel.

Using a screwdriver release the two knurled screws and remove the headlamp unit cover.



**[A]** - Dipped beam

**[B]** - Main beam

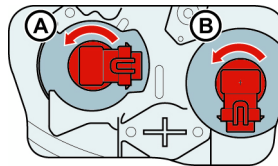
 The main beam bulb (B) is inboard on both the left and right headlamp units.

 **Warning: Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.**

 A spare main beam bulb is part of the vehicle tool kit. If used, replace at the earliest opportunity.

Remove the access cover and turn the bulb unit a quarter turn counterclockwise. Withdraw the unit and disconnect the wiring harness plug.

Connect a new bulb unit (H9 65W), insert the bulb unit and turn a quarter turn clockwise to lock. Install the headlamp access cover and wheel arch liner access panel.



### High Intensity Discharge Bulb

(Dipped Beam Option)

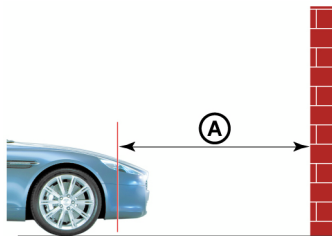
 **Warning: High Intensity Discharge (HID) bulbs produce a very high voltage. They should only be serviced by an Aston Martin Dealership.**

HID systems produce a brilliant white light by establishing a high voltage electrical arc between two electrodes within a sealed glass tube. Once the arc is established, the voltage lowers to normal operating conditions.

**HID bulbs are not renewable.** Contact to your Aston Martin Dealer if a HID bulb fails to operate.

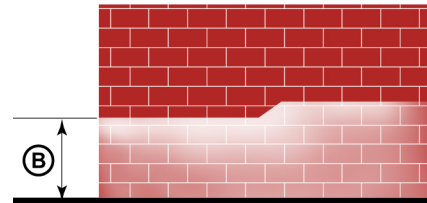
## Headlamp Alignment

Headlamp vertical aim check and adjustment must be completed with the vehicle parked on a flat surface with the headlamps facing a vertical wall at a distance of 25 ft to the outboard internal lens (A), with no additional loads in the vehicle.



### How to Check

Set the dipped beam to ON. Measure the height of the left side of the beam pattern projected onto the wall. This should measure 24.80 in (B) in from the ground for a correctly aimed lamp. This must be completed for both right and left headlamps.



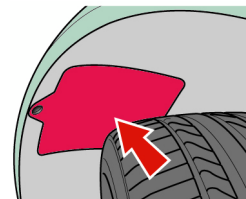
### How to Adjust

**⚠ Warning: Never allow anyone to turn the steering wheel whilst working in the road wheel arch.**

**⚠ Warning: Never remove the bulb access caps without reading the bulb replacement instructions.**

Should either headlamp require adjustment:

1. Remove the access panel. Turn the retaining screw 90° anti clockwise using a flat bladed screw driver or coin and pull out the access panel.
2. Adjust the headlamp aim by turning the adjusters using a T-20 torx driver.

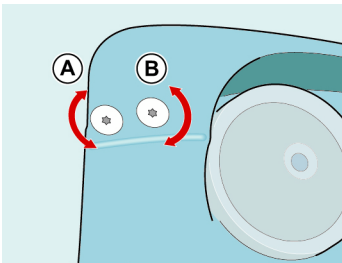


[A] - Horizontal aim

[B] - Vertical aim

3. Replace the access panel by snapping into place and installing the retaining screw, and turning 90° clockwise.

Check the vertical beam angle by reversing the vehicle backwards 12 ft and repeating the check procedure. The beam height should have reduced by 1 in.



## Other External Lamps

 LEDs can last tens of thousands of hours and are resistant to heat, cold, shock and vibration.

### High Level Stop Lamp

The high level mounted stop lamp unit consists of LEDs and is not repairable. If a high level mounted stop lamp LED fails contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

### Front Indicator and Parking Lamps

The front indicators and parking lamps consist of LEDs and are not repairable. If a front indicator or parking bulb fails to operate, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

### Side Indicators

If a side indicator lamp bulb fails, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

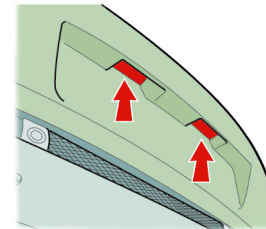
### License Plate Lamps

To change a license plate bulb:

Take care not to damage the vehicle trim.

Use a small flat blade screwdriver to lever out, from the right side, the lens unit. Twist, counterclockwise, and withdraw the bulb holder, remove the defective bulb and replace with a new one (Rating: 5W Type: C5W).

Twist the bulb holder back into in position. Replace the trunk trim panel.



### Rear Lamp Clusters

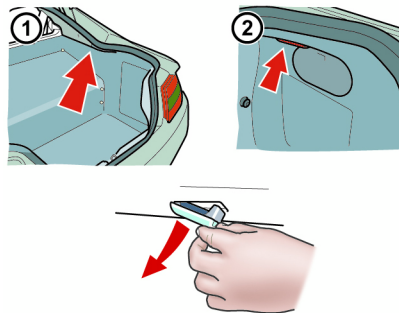
The rear indicators, stop and tail, reversing lamps and rear fog LEDs are contained in a sealed lamp cluster unit, one either side of the vehicle. The lamp cluster is not repairable, if a rear lamp fails contact your Aston Martin Dealer.



## Trunk Lamps

Take care not to damage the vehicle trim.

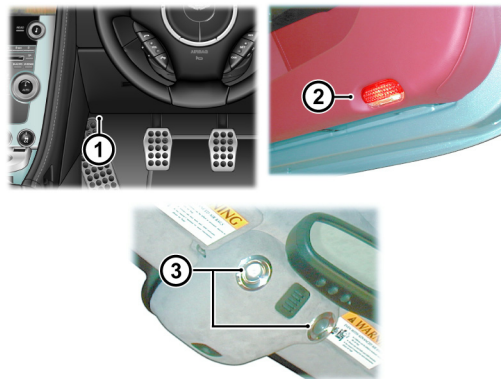
Lever out the lens unit. Replace the defective bulb (C10W 10W) and clip the lens unit back into its housing.



[1] - Coupe

[2] - Roadster

## Internal Lamps



[1] - Front footwell lamps: Type: W5W (Blue). Rating: 5W.

[2] - Door puddle lamps: Type: C5W (Festoon). Rating: 5W.

[3] - Reading lamps: LED

LEDs are not repairable. If an LED lamp fails to operate, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

To renew a bulb:

Take care not to damage the vehicle trim.

Lever out the lens unit and replace the faulty bulb. **Door lamp only:** Open the access flap and replace the faulty bulb.

Press the lens unit into its housing until it clips into position.

## Door Window Reset

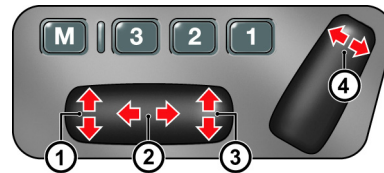
If power to the electric windows has been interrupted for any reason, they will fail to operate correctly until reset.

1. Sit in the driver's seat with all doors closed, insert the vehicle key into the ignition control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON).
2. Press firmly and hold the window switch until the window is at the maximum down position. Continue to hold the button for five seconds then release.
3. Pull back and hold the window switch until the window is in the maximum up position. Continue to hold the switch for a further five seconds, then release.
4. The window is now reset. Repeat for the other door windows.

## Front Seat Reset

Should a front seat fail to move or the seat memory position fails to work this may show a loss of seat position in the vehicle's memory. If so, complete the seat reset procedure detailed below:

**⚠ Warning: Make sure that there is nothing in front of, behind, or under the seat during adjustment.**



1. Press the seat forward button (2) until the seat is fully forward.
2. Press the seat back button (4) until the seat back is fully backwards<sub>1</sub>.
3. Press the seat down button (1) until the front of the seat is fully down.

---

<sub>1</sub>. Sport seat only.

4. Press the seat down button (3) until the rear of the seat is fully down.

The seat movement and position memory should now work correctly, if not contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

## Bodywork Maintenance

### Door drain holes

Check the drain holes in the bottom face of each door periodically and clear if necessary with, for example, a short length of wire or a pipe cleaner.

## Vehicle Cleaning

### Paint Work

Modern water based paints are much safer and more environmentally friendly than solvent based paints. Water based paints are however more susceptible to contamination and marking by corrosive substances. The following list is not exhaustive but does show the most common contaminants which may adversely affect your paint work:

 Other groups of contaminants may be added to this list as experience of water based paints and finishes increases.

- Bird Droppings
- Antifreeze
- Tree Sap
- Oils and Greases
- Insect Remains

Wash such substances from the vehicle using clean warm water with vehicle shampoo, at the earliest opportunity, especially in sunny weather which can accelerate contamination.

### Washing

 **Warning: Washing and polishing agents containing silicone should not be applied to glass. This will reduce the efficiency of the windshield wipers, causing smears which will reduce visibility, particularly during darkness and in the rain.**

 **Commercially operated automatic vehicle washes, jet washes and power operated mops are not recommended. The detergents used can contain certain chemicals which may, over time, be detrimental to some exterior parts of the vehicle. Prolonged usage of automatic vehicle washes and power operated mops will also cause fine scratches in the paint surface.**

For best results, do not wash the vehicle in strong sunlight. Allow the vehicle to cool before washing. Do not use household soaps or detergents. Do not direct water hoses at full force around the door and trunk lid seals.

When washing the vehicle, first hose it down first to remove all dust and mud residue.

When dust and mud have been removed wash gently with a soft sponge using cold or warm water with a mild neutral detergent as directed by the detergent manufacturer. Rinse thoroughly with a hose to remove all traces of soapy water. Finally dry with a chamois leather, which should be rinsed regularly in clean water.

Wash and clean the vehicle's front grill in the same way as the paint work, but make sure that the front grill is dried off completely leaving no water droplets on the grill (wipe the front grill last using a chamois leather): Chrome polish or other abrasive cleaners must not be used.

Aston Martin recommends the use of AUTOGLYM vehicle care products or preparations of similar reputable manufacture for adding to the washing water. Make sure that the manufacture's instructions are followed.

During the winter months, it is advisable to wash the vehicle more frequently, paying particular attention to the underside to combat the detrimental effects of any salt and sand contamination picked up from treated roads.

To delay the onset of corrosion developing on the brake components Aston Martin recommend that after washing this vehicle, the vehicle should be driven a short distance to make sure that all the water and washing product has dried off.

### Road Wheels

To avoid possible damage to the alloy road wheels, wheel nuts & wheel centre trims, from a build up of brake dust wash and clean the alloy road wheels frequently, using a mild soapy water solution only. Do not use chemical alloy road wheel cleaners, as they can often have a high acid or alkaline content and could cause discolouration. Always clean one wheel at a time and do not allow the cleaning solution to dry on the wheel. Fully flush off with clean water.

### Headlamp Lenses

Only use a mild soapy water solution when washing the Headlamp Lenses. Do not use cleaning materials which contain solvents.

Cleaning materials which contain solvents, i.e. tar remover, petrol, waxes or polishes, may damage the headlamp lens.

### Polishing

Approximately twice a year, a good quality polish should be applied to the body work and then buffed, using a soft lint free cloth.

The alloy wheel rims should be treated with a cleaner which is specifically manufactured for this purpose.

### Upholstery, Carpets and Seats

**⚠ Warning: Fumes from cleaning solvents may be dangerous in confined spaces. Make sure that the vehicle is well ventilated and follow the manufacturer's printed instructions when using these products.**

**⚠ Certain types of clothing, such as denim and vegetable tanned leather, are prone to 'dye transfer'. This can cause discolouration in the leather. Make sure that the affected areas are cleaned and re-protected as soon as possible.**

The seats and soft trimmed components of this vehicle are covered in hand crafted leather. In order to maintain the beauty of leather it will require regular cleaning, which, if neglected, may cause deterioration. Where dust and dirt are allowed to accumulate and become ingrained in the surface the leather may become permanently damaged. Leather faced features should be cleaned with a with a damp cloth moistened with an undiluted leather cleaner.

**Do not** use detergents, quick cleansers or furniture polishes. These products may give an initially impressive result, but their use will lead to rapid deterioration of the leather and will invalidate the warranty.

Several times a year, a leather conditioner or preservative should be used. Appropriate care materials are obtainable from your Aston Martin Dealer.

Alcantara roof linings and other soft trimmed areas may be brushed with a soft brush. Stains from water based substances such as coffee, tea or soft drinks should be cleaned as soon as possible with mild soap and water.

Consult your Aston Martin Dealer for instructions on the removal of more difficult stains such as oil, grease or ballpoint ink.

Carpets should be cleaned regularly with a vacuum cleaner. Any stains or grease marks should be removed with a good quality solvent suitable for use on carpets.

### Care and Maintenance of Seat Belts

 ***Do not allow seat belts to be retracted until they are completely dry.***

To make sure that the restraint webbings are in correct working order, regularly check the seat belts. Look for fraying, cuts, burns and similar problems. Make sure that the latches and buckles operate correctly. If a seat belt is not in good condition or is not working correctly, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Any seat belt that has been worn during a serious collision should be replaced by an Aston Martin Dealer.

To clean the seat belts, use mild soap and water; do not use bleach, solvents or dyes as they can weaken the material. Allow the seat belts to dry thoroughly before use.

### Convertible Roof Fabric

(Roadster only)

 ***Do not use automatic vehicle washes. Brushes, detergents and pressurised water jets may damage the roof fabric. Do not use power washers. Jets of water may damage the weather seals and the roof fabric. Do not use spot cleaners, chemical diluents or any organic cleaners. If in doubt, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.***

To maintain the appearance and condition of the roof fabric the cleaning and reproof recommendations given below should be followed. This is of particular importance in the case of light colored roof fabrics.

 ***Do not leave the roof in the lowered (folded) position for longer than necessary. In certain circumstances permanent soiling along folds may occur.***

### Cleaning

Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible. The organic acids in bird lime can adversely affect the roof fabric.

Carefully vacuum clean the roof fabric to remove any loose particles. Gently, and evenly, wash the roof fabric using a mild soap solution and a soft brush.

 ***A hard brush will damage the fabric fibres.***

Rinse the roof fabric thoroughly with clean water to remove any traces of soap. Allow the roof fabric to completely dry before operating the roof.

### Reproofs

Due to its construction the roof fabric will stay watertight without re-proofing. However to retain the appearance of the roof, to reduce soiling and to improve the drying time Aston Martin recommended that the roof is re-proofed annually, by your Aston Martin Dealer.

### Under Hood Cleaning

Under hood cleaning using high pressure hoses or steam cleaners should not be carried out. The electronic control module connections and fuse boxes can be damaged by indiscriminate use of high pressure cleaning equipment.

## Vehicle Storage

### Recommendations

 These recommendations apply to new and pre-owned vehicles either in dealer or customer ownership.

If your vehicle is not to be used for periods in excess of three months it should be stored in a dry, well ventilated building.

1. Drive the vehicle for a sufficient distance to warm the oil in the engine and the transaxle; make sure that the internal components of the engine are lubricated.
2. Check the engine coolant level. Top up if necessary with the correct antifreeze and water solution.
3. In order to take the weight off the tires, raise the vehicle with a jack and place supports under the front and rear suspension. If the vehicle is not raised from the ground, increase the tire pressures to 3.4 bar. Cover the tires to exclude any light. Turn the wheels ¼ turn every month to avoid tire flat spots.
4. Raise the roof<sup>1</sup>.

 Do not leave the roof in the lowered position for longer than necessary. In certain circumstances permanent soiling along folds may occur.

5. If mains power is available, use a battery conditioner to maintain the battery in a fully charged state.
6. Once a month:
  - 6.1 Disconnect the battery conditioner (if installed).
  - 6.2 Start and operate the engine until it is fully warmed up.
  - 6.3 Check there are no fluid leaks.
  - 6.4 Set the ignition to OFF.
  - 6.5 Connect a battery conditioner.
  - 6.6 Check and correct tire pressures if necessary. When returning the vehicle to normal service, set the tire pressures to normal specification before driving on the road.

### Extended Storage

For storage periods exceeding six months the following measures are recommended:

 Do Not Drain Fuel System.

1. Operate the engine until there is as small a quantity of fuel in the tank as is practical for storage purposes.
2. Add engine oil to the remaining fuel in the tank to make a concentration of 2% (i.e. 20 ml per one ltr of fuel), then operate engine for not less than ten minutes to circulate the mixture thoroughly through all of the fuel system.
3. Inspect rubber connections of coolant system and have them renewed if necessary.
4. Wash the vehicle bodywork thoroughly and repair any paint blisters or patches of corrosion in order to prevent any further deterioration. Apply a suitable polish.
5. Clean the carpets and upholstery thoroughly. Treat all leather upholstery with an application of a leather conditioner or preservative.
6. If the storage building is dry leave vehicle windows slightly open. If there is any tendency towards dampness close vehicle doors and windows and place an anti-moisture compound such as silica desiccant bags in an open metal container inside vehicle.
7. Cover vehicle with a cotton or fabric cover.

<sup>1</sup>. Roadster only.

## Recommissioning after Storage

Provided that the vehicle has been stored in accordance with the recommended procedure, only the following points should need attention before using your vehicle on the road.

**! Starting the engine without sufficient lubrication can cause serious engine damage. Make sure that the engine oil pressure is established before the engine starts.**

1. Check the tire pressures, inflate if necessary, lower the vehicle to ground.
2. Drain the engine oil and install a new engine oil filter element. Fill the engine to its maximum level (as shown on the dip stick) with approved oil.
3. Drain the final drive unit. Fill the final drive unit to its maximum level (oil will dribble out of the fill hole), with approved oil.
4. Check the coolant level and, if necessary, top up with the correct antifreeze to water solution.
5. Check all fluid levels and top up as necessary.
6. Fill the fuel tank.
7. Obtain engine oil pressure:

- 7.1 Press and hold the accelerator pedal hard to the floor (this temporarily stops fuel injection during cranking).
- 7.2 Fully press the brake (SportShift transmission) or clutch (manual transmission) pedal down. Insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control and move through to engine start. Allow the engine to crank until the oil pressure symbol in the instrument cluster  goes OFF (showing oil pressure in the engine).
- 7.3 Set the ignition to OFF. Release the vehicle key and accelerator pedal.
8. Start the engine normally and check that the oil pressure and ignition warning symbols go OFF as the engine starts (correct oil pressure and battery charging).
9. Raise the hood and check for leaks of fuel, oil and coolant.
10. Check the operation of the roof and check for oil leaks. If the roof does not operate correctly during first use, operate the roof a few times (with the engine running to keep the battery at full voltage). If the roof still does not operate correctly contact your Aston Martin Dealer<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup>. Roadster only.

11. Carefully test drive your vehicle and check the operation of all functions.

Braking performance can be impaired, initially, due to a fine film of corrosion on the brake rotor surface. Drive conservatively and, when safe to do so, frequently apply the brakes until rotor surfaces have been cleaned. Full braking performance should then be restored.

If in any doubt about the condition of your vehicle, have it checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



# Specifications

|                        |      |                             |       |
|------------------------|------|-----------------------------|-------|
| Engine.....            | 12.2 | Wheels .....                | 12.6  |
| Performance .....      | 12.2 | Tires.....                  | 12.7  |
| Power and Torque ..... | 12.3 | Bulbs .....                 | 12.7  |
| Transmission .....     | 12.3 | Vehicle Specification.....  | 12.8  |
| Electrics.....         | 12.4 | Vehicle Weights .....       | 12.8  |
| Steering.....          | 12.5 | Vehicle Dimensions .....    | 12.8  |
| Suspension.....        | 12.5 | Vehicle Features.....       | 12.10 |
| Brakes.....            | 12.5 | Fluids and Capacities ..... | 12.11 |

Engine

All alloy, quad overhead cam 32 valve V8. Four knock sensors - two per cylinder head. Cylinder block heater<sub>1</sub>.Variable inlet camshaft timing.

**Fuel** - Recommended 98 RON Super Unleaded for optimum performance. 95 RON minimum.

**Fuel Delivery System** - Multi point sequential fuel injection.

**Capacity** - 4735 cc

**Firing Order** - 1 - 5 - 4 - 2 - 6 - 3 - 7 - 8

**Idle Speed** - 750 rpm

**Bore** - 3.58 in

**Stroke** - 3.58 in

**Spark Plugs** - NGK – IFR7N-10

**Spark Plug Gap** - 0.035 - 0.039 in

**Compression Ratio** - 11.3:1

**Ignition** - ‘Coil on Plug’ ignition system

**Emission Control** - Four Oxygen sensors and three-way catalytic convertors. Evaporative loss purge

<sub>1</sub>. Option.

Performance

**Coupe and Roadster<sub>2</sub>**

**Maximum Power** -

- Vantage: 420.0 bhp @ 7300 rpm
- Vantage S: 429.1 bhp @ 7300 rpm

**Maximum Torque** -

- Vantage: 346.6 lb / ft @ 5000 rpm
- Vantage S: 361.4 lb / ft @ 5000 rpm

**Maximum Speed** - 174 mph<sub>3</sub>

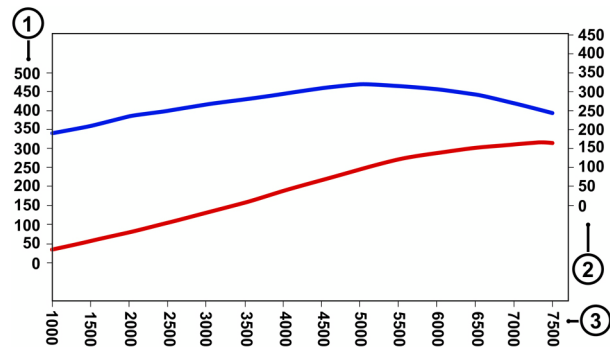
**0-60 mph** - 4.7 seconds

**Maximum Engine Speed** - 7000.0 rpm

<sub>2</sub>. Manual and SportShift transmission.

<sub>3</sub>. Where permitted.

Power and Torque



[1] - Torque (Nm / lb/ft)  
[2] - Power (kw / bhp)  
[3] - Engine speed (rpm)

Transmission

Manual Transmission

Graziano six speed transmission with integrated shifter bellcrank system (Cable Operated).

Gear Ratios

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| 1st     | 3.15:1 |
| 2nd     | 1.95:1 |
| 3rd     | 1.43:1 |
| 4th     | 1.15:1 |
| 5th     | 0.94:1 |
| 6th     | 0.76:1 |
| Reverse | 2.38:1 |

SportShift Transaxle

Vantage

Graziano six speed transaxle with integrated, electronically-controlled hydraulic shifting system.

Gear Ratios

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| 1st     | 3.15:1 |
| 2nd     | 1.95:1 |
| 3rd     | 1.43:1 |
| 4th     | 1.15:1 |
| 5th     | 0.94:1 |
| 6th     | 0.76:1 |
| Reverse | 2.38:1 |

Vantage S

Graziano seven speed transaxle with integrated, electronically-controlled hydraulic shifting system.

Gear Ratios

|         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1st     | 3.286:1 |
| 2nd     | 2.158:1 |
| 3rd     | 1.609:1 |
| 4th     | 1.269:1 |
| 5th     | 1.034:1 |
| 6th     | 0.848:1 |
| 7th     | 0.675:1 |
| Reverse | 3.286:1 |

Final Drive

Ratio:

- Vantage: 3.91:1. Multi plate Limited slip differential
- Vantage S: 4.18:1. Multi plate Limited slip differential

Clutch

Single plate - 10.5 in diameter

Electrics

**Alternator** - Denso SC2 150 Amps

**Voltage Regulation** - 14.4V ±0.5V @ 68°F

**Battery** - Varta 90 AH

## Steering

Rack and pinion, power assisted steering. Column tilt and reach adjustments.

**Turns lock to lock** - 3.0

**Turning Circle** - 36 ft (Kerb to Kerb)

**Toe<sub>1</sub>** -

| Front Toe Out  | Rear Toe In           |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| -4.0' (± 2.0') | 10.0' (+5.0' / -0.0') |
| -8' (±4')      | 20' (± 10')           |

## Suspension

**Front** - Aluminium independent double wishbone. Coil over aluminium monotube dampers and anti-roll bar.

**Rear** - Aluminium independent double wishbone. Coil over aluminium monotube dampers and anti-roll bar.

### Features

- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)

## Brakes

### Footbrake

**Ventilated and Grooved Steel Discs all Round**

### Vantage

|           | Front       | Rear        |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| Diameter  | 14 in       | 13 in       |
| Callipers | Four piston | Four piston |

### Vantage S

|           | Front      | Rear       |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| Diameter  | 15 in      | 13 in      |
| Callipers | Six piston | Six piston |

### Park Brake

Lever and cable operated independent park brake callipers on each rear brake rotor.

<sup>1</sup>. With the vehicle at its Design Weight. Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer.

# Wheels

## Aston Martin Forged Aluminium Alloy<sub>1</sub>

|           | Front      | Rear       |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| Vantage   | 8.5j x 19" | 9.5J x 19" |
| Vantage S | 8.5j x 19" | 10J x 19"  |

## Aston Martin Aluminium Alloy

| Front      | Rear       |
|------------|------------|
| 8.5j x 19" | 9.5J x 19" |

## Aston Martin Lightweight Forged Aluminium Alloy<sub>2</sub>

| Front      | Rear       |
|------------|------------|
| 8.5j x 19" | 9.5J x 19" |

<sub>1</sub>. Vantage: Option. Vantage S: Standard.  
<sub>2</sub>. SportPack Option (installed with Bridgestone tires only).

## Wheel Nut Torque

Tighten every second nut until all five nuts are tightened. Tighten all wheel nuts in two stages.

1. To 60 lb / ft one continuous movement.
2. To 133 lb / ft in one continuous movement.



Tires

Tire Loading

Vantage

Tires installed to this vehicle shall have a maximum load rating not less than 1389 lb (front) and 1565 lb (rear), or a load index of 92 (front) and 96 (rear) and a speed category of Y.

Vantage S

Tires installed to this vehicle shall have a maximum load rating not less than 1477 lb (front) and 1708 lb (rear), or a load index of 94 (front) and 99 (rear) and a speed category of Y.

Summer Tires

Vantage

|                   | Front              | Rear               |
|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Bridgestone RE050 | 235/40 ZR 19 (92Y) | 275/35 ZR 19 (96Y) |

Vantage S

|                   | Front             | Rear              |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Bridgestone RE050 | 245/40 Y 19 (94Y) | 285/35 Y 19 (99Y) |

Winter Tires

|                       | Front               | Rear                 |
|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| Pirelli Sottozero 270 | 235/40 R19 (96W XL) | 275/35 R19 (100W XL) |

Tire Air Pressures

Cold Inflation<sub>1</sub>

| Front   | Rear    |
|---------|---------|
| 2.3 bar | 2.5 bar |

<sub>1</sub>. All Tires.

Bulbs

|                                                                                                                     | Rating | Type |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|------|
| Headlamp dipped beam (HID)                                                                                          | 35W    | D1S  |
| Headlamp dipped beam (Hal)                                                                                          | 55W    | H11  |
| Headlamp main beam                                                                                                  | 65W    | H9   |
| License plate, footwell (blue) lamps                                                                                | 5W     | W5W  |
| Door lamps                                                                                                          | 5W     | C5W  |
| Trunk lamps                                                                                                         | 10W    | C10W |
| Front indicator lamps                                                                                               |        | LED  |
| Side repeater                                                                                                       |        | LED  |
| Reading lamps                                                                                                       |        | LED  |
| High Mounted Stop Lamp                                                                                              |        | LED  |
| The rear lamp cluster is a sealed unit. If any rear cluster lamp fails to operate contact your Aston Martin Dealer. |        |      |

## Vehicle Specification

### Body

- Two door coupe with tailgate. 2+0 seating
- Two door roadster. 2+0 seating

Extruded aluminium bonded body structure with aluminium and composite body panels. Extruded aluminium door side impact beams.

### Towing

This vehicle is not engineered to tow any form of caravan, boat or trailer.

No towing devices are approved for installing to this vehicle, other than a front towing eye to aid recovery or loading of this vehicle onto a transporter.

## Vehicle Weights

### Vantage

|                            | Coupe              | Roadster           |
|----------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Kerb Weight                | 3593 lb            | 3770 lb            |
| Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) | 4244 lb            | 4420 lb            |
| Trunk Maximum Load         | 88 lb <sub>1</sub> | 88 lb <sub>1</sub> |

### Vantage S

|                            | Coupe              | Roadster           |
|----------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Kerb Weight                | 3549 lb            | 3726 lb            |
| Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) | 4211 lb            | 4387 lb            |
| Trunk Maximum Load         | 88 lb <sub>1</sub> | 88 lb <sub>1</sub> |

<sub>1</sub> Evenly distributed

## Vehicle Dimensions

### Interior

|                    | Coupe       | Roadster  |
|--------------------|-------------|-----------|
| Effective Headroom | 36.7 in     | 36.5      |
| Effective Legroom  | 42.7 in     | 42.7 in   |
| Trunk Volume       | 8.4 cu / ft | 7 cu / ft |

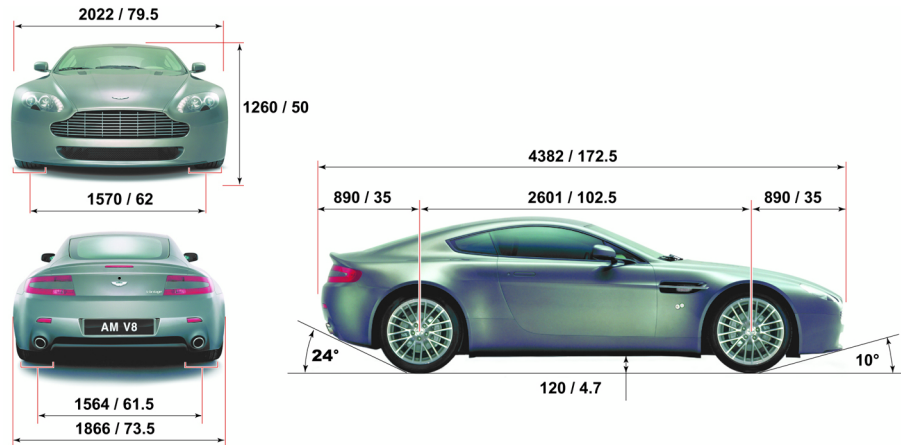
### Exterior

(mm / inch)

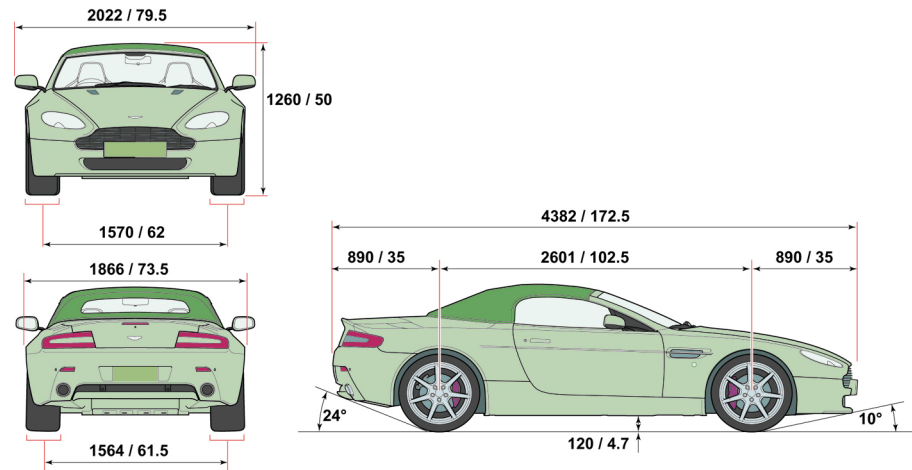
 Ride height is measured at GVW.



### Coupe



### Roadster



# Vehicle Features

## Interior

- Handcrafted leather and fabric trim
- Formed aluminium facia<sub>1</sub>
- Polished aluminium and painted alloy details
- Climate control
- Security system interacting with the central locking system and PATS immobiliser system
- Driver and front passenger dual stage front airbags
- Passenger side airbag<sub>2</sub>
- Ten direction electrically adjusted driver's seat
- Position memory front seats (including door rear view mirrors)<sub>1</sub>.
- Heated seats (two heat levels)<sub>1</sub>.
- Organic electroluminescent (OEL) displays

<sub>1</sub>. Option(s).  
<sub>2</sub>. Sport Seats Only.

- Infotainment centre
  - Audio System with radio, six CD autochanger and 260W power output with Dolby Pro Logic II
  - Aston Martin Audio system with radio, 6 CD autochanger and 700W power output with Dolby Pro Logic II<sub>1</sub>.
  - Bang & Olufsen audio system with radio, 6 CD autochanger and 974W power output<sub>1</sub>.
  - Hands-free phone system<sub>1</sub>.
  - Menus for audio, hands-free phone, satellite navigation<sub>3</sub><sub>1</sub>. and vehicle security
- Hard Disk Drive (HDD) satellite navigation system <sub>1</sub>.<sub>3</sub>.

<sub>3</sub>. Not available in all markets

## Exterior

- Door mirrors
  - Heated, electrically adjusted
  - Position memory system<sub>4</sub>
  - Power fold system
  - Auto fold system
- Electrically operated door windows
- Heated rear window
- Parking assist sensors

<sub>4</sub>. Option.

## Fluids and Capacities

### Recommended Fluids

**!** *To achieve the required high performance of synthetic lubricants, do not mix with mineral oils.*

**Engine Oil** - The engine in your vehicle has been engineered and fully tested to run with:

- Castrol Edge Sport 10w-60
- or:
- Castrol Formula RS 10w-60

However, if these oils are not available, a fully synthetic 5w-50 or 10w-60 oil meeting the specification ACEA A3/B3 can be used. No other viscosity grades or specifications are acceptable.

Only use oils 'Certified For Gasoline Engines' by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ISLAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.



**!** *Do not mix OAT antifreeze with glycol based antifreeze.*

**Engine Coolant** - 50% water, 50% Havoline OAT

**Manual Gearbox Oil and Final Drive** - Castrol BOT270A<sub>1</sub>

**Brake and Clutch Fluid** - Castrol Response Super Dot 4

**Power Steering Fluid** - Pentosin CHF 11S

**Air Conditioner Refrigerant** - HFC134A

### Capacities

**Engine Sump (including filter)** - 10.5 quart

**Engine Cooling System** - 14.8 quart

**Transaxle & Cooler** - 4.6 quart

**Screen Washer Reservoir** - 6.2 quart

**Fuel Tank** - 21 gall<sub>2</sub>

---

<sub>1</sub>. Only available from Aston Martin Dealers.

---

<sub>2</sub>. Approximately 20.5 gall usable.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

# Service

|                                              |      |
|----------------------------------------------|------|
| Pre-delivery Inspection.....                 | A.2  |
| Servicing .....                              | A.4  |
| Service Record .....                         | A.7  |
| Anti Corrosion Inspection.....               | A.9  |
| Replacement of Airbag Units .....            | A.10 |
| Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners..... | A.11 |
| Field Service Actions .....                  | A.11 |
| Service Action Recalls .....                 | A.12 |

## Pre-delivery Inspection

This free series of checks is carried out on the vehicle by the Selling Dealer before delivery. The checks make sure that you receive a vehicle which matches the high quality standards set by Aston Martin Limited.

Make sure that the entry is stamped and signed as completed. The following checks will be made:

### Levels and Leaks

- Engine oil
- Power steering oil
- Brake and clutch fluid
- Engine coolant level
- Engine coolant specific gravity
- Windshield washer fluid
- Fuel system
- Transaxle leak check
- Battery

### Mechanical Functions

- Gear selection
- Clutch operation
- Throttle pedal operation
- Park brake operation

- Steering column adjustment and lock operation
- Seat adjuster rails
- Hood release and catch
- Door operation and locks
- Storage compartments
- Rear view mirror
- Trunk release and catch
- Seat belt operation

### Electrical Checks

- Battery condition
- Heated rear window
- Windshield and headlamp washers
- Windshield wipers
- Climate control
- Infotainment centre operation
- All speakers
- Reversing, license plate and brake lamps
- Side and headlamps
- Rear fog lamps
- Hazard warning lamps
- Instrument illumination and dimmer

- Gauges and warning symbols
- Centre stack controls
- Horns
- Reset clock
- Blower motor
- Seat belt warning system
- Security system and vehicle key
- Interior lamps
- Cigar lighter<sup>1</sup>
- All seat functions
- Door window mechanisms
- Door and trunk lamps
- Central locking system
- Filler flap lock operation
- Clutch pedal start inhibit
- Door mirror adjustments
- Interrogate fault codes
- Record battery open-circuit voltage
- Tire pressure sensing

---

<sup>1</sup>. Option.

- Centre console controls

## Wheels and Tires

- Install locking road wheel nuts<sup>1</sup>
- Check road wheel nuts torque
- Tire pressures
- Tire orientation

## Road Test

- Engine
- Clutch
- Transaxle
- Steering
- Brakes
- Wheel balance
- Dampers
- Exhaust by-pass system
- Gear shift operation
- Noise, vibration or harshness
- Climate control performance

<sup>1</sup>. Option.

- Instruments operation
- Seat belt and buckle operation
- Steering wheel alignment
- Dynamic stability control, traction control and anti-lock braking system operation
- Transmission oil cooler

## Final Checks

- Drive belt tensioner operation
- Fuel and brake pipe security
- Fuel and fluid leaks
- Security of cooling hoses
- Exhaust catalyst security

## Hand-over Preparation

- Check function of locks and vehicle keys
- Clean bodywork and road wheel arch liners.
- Clean off all transit labels
- Valet vehicle
- De-grease windshield
- Install carpets
- Remove interior protection
- Check Owner's Guidebook

- Check tools
- Install License plates
- Tire sealant kit
- Towing eye
- Battery conditioner<sup>2</sup>
- Field Service Actions and Recall status

### Free Pre-delivery Inspection

\*4.75 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature:

Date:

(Dealer Stamp)

\* Scheduled operation time.

<sup>2</sup>. Option.

## Servicing

### Service Periods

Vehicle servicing is every 1000 mile or 12 month, which ever occurs first.

- 1,000 mile or 12 month
- 20,000 mile or 24 month
- 30,000 mile or 36 month

### Service Tables

The following service schedules are recommended for this vehicle. The schedules may be modified if necessary. Please consult your Aston Martin Dealer for details of any service schedule updates.

| 1,000 mile<br>12 month                  | 20,000 mile<br>24 month |                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Pre-Maintenance</b>                  |                         |                                                          |
| x                                       | x                       | Install vehicle protection kit and wing covers           |
| x                                       | x                       | Check bulletins, field service actions and recall status |
| <b>Fluids, Filters and Leaks Checks</b> |                         |                                                          |
| x                                       | x                       | Renew engine oil (drain both oil reservoir and sump)     |
| x                                       | x                       | Renew engine oil filter and clean sump filters           |
| x                                       | x                       | Check for engine oil leaks                               |
| Every 30,000 mile or three years        |                         | Renew air cleaner elements                               |
| Every 20,000 mile or two years          |                         | Renew the air cleaner elements (extreme environments)    |

| 1,000 mile<br>12 month            | 20,000 mile<br>24 month            |                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Every 60,000 mile<br>or six years | Every 100,000<br>mile or ten years | Check manual transaxle oil level. Top up if required                  |
| Every 40,000 mile or four years   |                                    | Renew manual transaxle oil and clean the filter                       |
| Every 50,000 mile or five years   |                                    | Renew engine coolant – concentration 50/50                            |
| x                                 | x                                  | Check engine coolant level. Top up if required                        |
| x                                 | x                                  | Check fuel hoses, pipes and unions for leaks, security and condition  |
| Every two years                   |                                    | Renew brake and clutch fluid                                          |
| x                                 | x                                  | Check brake and clutch fluid levels. Top up if required               |
| x                                 | x                                  | Check power steering system for leaks, security and condition         |
| x                                 | x                                  | Check brake hoses, pipes and unions for leaks, security and condition |
| x                                 | x                                  | Check suspension dampers for leaks                                    |
| x                                 | x                                  | Top-up windshield and headlamp washer reservoir                       |
| x                                 | x                                  | Check exhaust system for leaks                                        |
| x                                 | x                                  | Check Air Conditioning system for leaks                               |
| x                                 | x                                  | Check operation of exhaust by-pass valves                             |
| -                                 | x                                  | Renew pollen filter                                                   |
| x                                 | x                                  | Check power steering fluid. Top up if required                        |
| x                                 | x                                  | Check SportShift system for leaks                                     |
| x                                 | x                                  | Check SportShift system fluid level                                   |
| x                                 | x                                  | Check SportShift system vents for blockages                           |



| 1,000 mile<br>12 month            | 20,000 mile<br>24 month |                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Mechanical Function Checks</b> |                         |                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| x                                 | x                       | Lubricate all door locks and hinges                                                                                                                                                         |
| x                                 | x                       | Lubricate hood secondary catch                                                                                                                                                              |
| x                                 | x                       | Check security of the hood catch. Check that the hood secondary catch moves freely over its whole travel and returns smartly under spring pressure.                                         |
| x                                 | x                       | Check and adjust the accessory drive belt tension. Renew if necessary                                                                                                                       |
| Every 15 years or 150,000 mile    |                         | Replace the accessory drive belt.                                                                                                                                                           |
| x                                 | x                       | Check condition of park brake pads                                                                                                                                                          |
| x                                 | x                       | Inspect brake pad wear and condition of discs and callipers. Replace brake pads and wear warning leads if 60% worn. Check front brake rotor shields for fatigue and for clearance to discs. |
| x                                 | -                       | Check wiper blade inserts. Renew if necessary                                                                                                                                               |
| -                                 | x                       | Renew wiper blades                                                                                                                                                                          |
| x                                 | x                       | Inspect coolant radiator, air conditioning condenser and transmission cooler. Clean if required                                                                                             |
| x                                 | x                       | Check security of exhaust system mountings and heat shields and check bypass valve operation 1000 / 2500 rpm                                                                                |
| x                                 | x                       | Check cooling system hoses security and condition                                                                                                                                           |
| x                                 | x                       | Check Air Conditioning hoses security and condition                                                                                                                                         |
| x                                 | -                       | Check security and condition of suspension ball joints, gaiters and bushes                                                                                                                  |
| -                                 | x                       | Check tightness of drive shaft bolts                                                                                                                                                        |

| 1,000 mile<br>12 month            | 20,000 mile<br>24 month |                                                               |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| -                                 | x                       | Check condition of underbody protection and wheel arch liners |
| Every 40 mile or four years       |                         | Clean throttle butterflies                                    |
| <b>Electrical Function Checks</b> |                         |                                                               |
| 70,000 mile                       |                         | Renew spark plugs                                             |
| x                                 | x                       | Check and record battery voltage and drain                    |
| x                                 | x                       | Clean and service the battery connections if required         |
| -                                 | x                       | Check headlamp alignment. Adjust if required                  |
| x                                 | x                       | Check operation of all lamps                                  |
| x                                 | x                       | Check operation of all warning symbols                        |
| x                                 | x                       | Check audible warnings including security system              |
| x                                 | x                       | Check operation of the horns                                  |
| x                                 | x                       | Check operation of the windshield wipers                      |
| x                                 | x                       | Check windshield and headlamp washers and jets                |
| x                                 | x                       | Check rear view mirrors for security, function and heaters    |
| x                                 | x                       | Check and operate powerfold mirrors                           |
| x                                 | x                       | Check and operate electric windows                            |
| x                                 | x                       | Check service interval display. Reset                         |
| <b>Wheels and Tire Checks</b>     |                         |                                                               |
| x                                 | x                       | Check for correct tire size, type and orientation             |
| x                                 | x                       | Check and report tire tread depth                             |

| 1,000 mile<br>12 month      | 20,000 mile<br>24 month |                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| x                           | x                       | Check tires for uneven, excessive wear or damage                                                      |
| x                           | x                       | Check and adjust tire pressures                                                                       |
| x                           | x                       | Check torque of road wheel nuts                                                                       |
| x                           | x                       | Check road wheel rims for inner and outer damage.                                                     |
| x                           | x                       | Check operation of tire pressure sensors                                                              |
| x                           | x                       | Check 'use by' date of tire repair kit. Replace if expiry date is within 12 months                    |
| <b>Anti Corrosion Check</b> |                         |                                                                                                       |
| x                           | x                       | Check body panels and underbody for corrosion starting from the inside - out (excluding stone chips). |
| <b>Gear Change Modes</b>    |                         |                                                                                                       |
| x                           | x                       | Auto Drive                                                                                            |
| x                           | x                       | SportShift                                                                                            |
| x                           | x                       | Reverse                                                                                               |
| x                           | x                       | Sport                                                                                                 |
| <b>Final Checks</b>         |                         |                                                                                                       |
| x                           | x                       | Degrease windshield                                                                                   |
| x                           | x                       | Carry out road test - including operation of all gearbox modes                                        |
| x                           | x                       | Check ABS and traction control operation                                                              |
| x                           | x                       | Check operation of all seat belts and buckles                                                         |

| 1,000 mile<br>12 month | 20,000 mile<br>24 month |                                                 |
|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| x                      | x                       | Check that fuel filler bowl rain drain is clear |

## Service Record

The following service records cover the regular services at 1000 mile or 12 month, which ever occurs first, intervals. Make sure that at each service the appropriate entry is stamped and signed as completed.

**Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):** -

**Date of Delivery:** -

\* Scheduled operation time.

### 1000 mile or 12 month

\*3.00 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature and Stamp:

Date:

Odometer:

### 20,000 mile or 24 month

\*3.85 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature and Stamp:

Date:

Odometer:

### 30,000 mile or 3rd year

\*3.25 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature and Stamp:

Date:

Odometer:

### 40,000 mile or 4th year

\*4.15 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature and Stamp:

Date:

Odometer:

### 50,000 mile or 5th year

\*3.00 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature and Stamp:

Date:

Odometer:

**60 mile or 6th year**

\*4.00 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature and Stamp:

Date:

Odometer:

**80,000 mile or 8th year**

\*4.15 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature and Stamp:

Date:

Odometer:

**100,000 mile or 10th year**

\*4.05 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature and Stamp:

Date:

Odometer:

**70,000 mile or 7th year**

\*4.10 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature and Stamp:

Date:

Odometer:

**90,000 mile or 9th year**

\*3.25 Hours

Service Actions checked:

Open Service Actions completed:

Signature and Stamp:

Date:

Odometer:

Anti Corrosion Inspection

Anti Corrosion Inspection 1st Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

Anti Corrosion Inspection 3rd Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

Anti Corrosion Inspection 5th Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

Anti Corrosion Inspection 2nd Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

Anti Corrosion Inspection 4th Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

Anti Corrosion Inspection 6th Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

### Anti Corrosion Inspection 7th Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

### Anti Corrosion Inspection 9th Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

### Anti Corrosion Inspection 8th Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

### Anti Corrosion Inspection 10th Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

## Replacement of Airbag Units

Every 10 years from the date of vehicle registration, all airbag units must be replaced. To make sure this is completed correctly and safely, this work should be carried out by your Aston Martin Dealership.

### Airbag Replacement 10th Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

## Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners

Every 10 years from the date of vehicle registration, all seat belt pretensioners must be replaced. To make sure this is completed correctly and safely, this work should be carried out by your Aston Martin Dealership.

### Seat Belt Pre-Tensioners Replacement 10th Year

Signature:

Date:

Odometer:

(Dealer Stamp)

## Field Service Actions

**Action No.**

Date

**Dealer**

**Action No.**

Date \_\_\_\_\_

**Dealer**

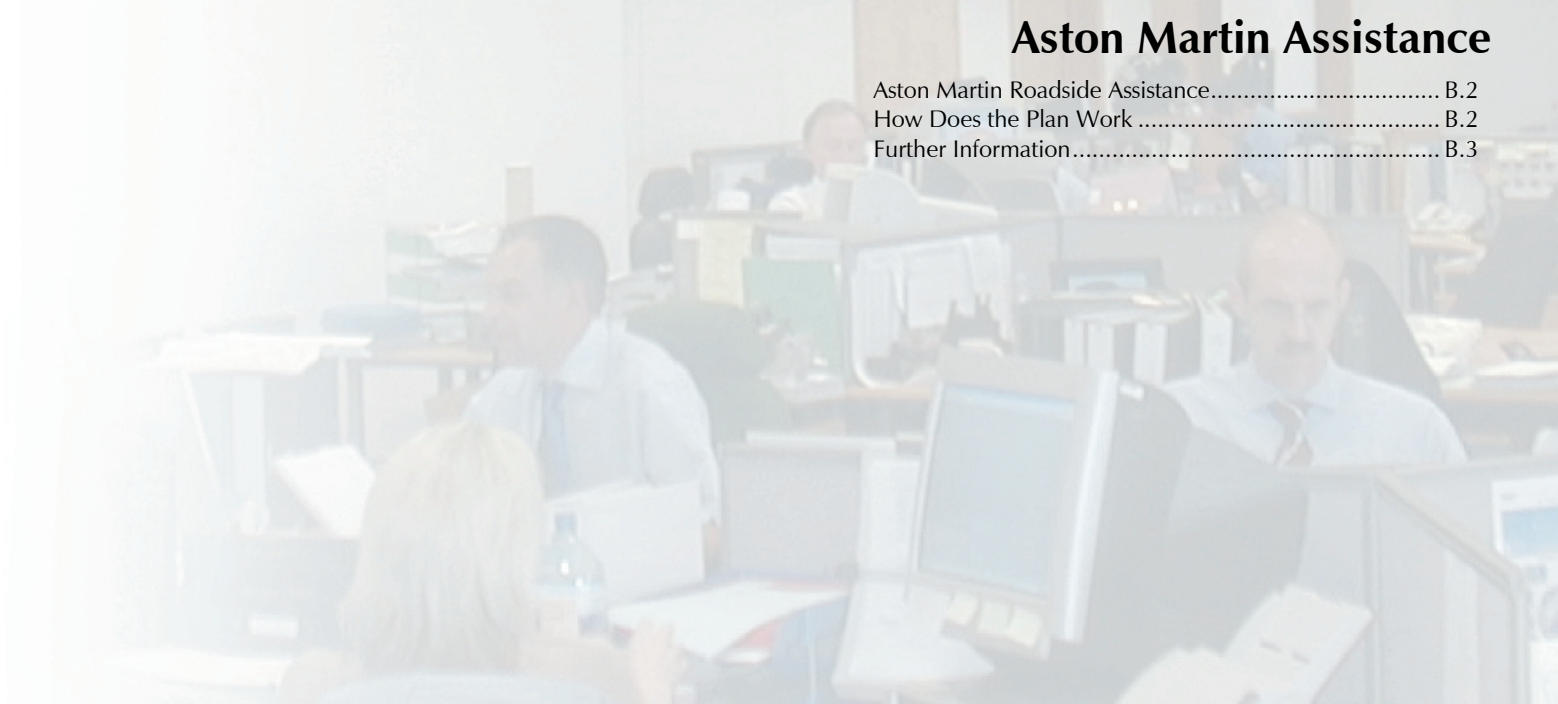
Service Action Recalls

| Action No. | Date | Dealer | Recall No. | Date | Dealer | Action No. | Date | Dealer |
|------------|------|--------|------------|------|--------|------------|------|--------|
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |
|            |      |        |            |      |        |            |      |        |



# Aston Martin Assistance

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Aston Martin Roadside Assistance..... | B.2 |
| How Does the Plan Work .....          | B.2 |
| Further Information.....              | B.3 |



## Aston Martin Roadside Assistance

In the event of a breakdown caused by a defect covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, the Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme will provide the Aston Martin owner with emergency roadside assistance at no cost. The scheme also provides the following benefits:

- Exclusive 24-Hour Toll-Free Assistance Line
- 24-Hour Emergency Towing
- 24-Hour Roadside Assistance
- 24-Hour Emergency Lockout Service (up to US \$100 per call out)
- Sign and Drive Service
- 24-Hour Emergency Trip Interruption Benefits
- 24-Hour Aston Martin Dealer Locator Service
- Repaired Vehicle Reunite Service
- Assistance Experience Survey Card

The Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme benefits provide for towing to the nearest approved dealer. Should the vehicle breakdown occur 150 or more miles from the nearest approved dealer and 150 or more miles from the primary residence of the owner or operator, the owner or operator is entitled to trip interruption benefits. Trip interruption benefits include lodging and meals for up to 2 nights, and alternative transportation. Trip interruption benefits are limited to a maximum of US \$500 per interruption.

The term of the Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme runs concurrent with the Aston Martin New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The plan does not cover the following:

- Rental fleet vehicles
- Breakdowns caused by accident, vandalism, racing or abuse
- Additional towing costs for towing to other than the nearest approved dealer to the breakdown site

Expenses for such items as entertainment, recreation, and non-essential goods and services are excluded from trip interruption benefits.

## How Does the Plan Work

The national toll-free assistance telephone number is shown on your Roadside Assistance Membership Card and on the label on the drivers side door pillar.

If your Aston Martin vehicle suffers a breakdown whilst driving, call the toll-free number: 1- 888 - 59ASTON. It is available 24 hours a day.

 *It may be helpful to have the relevant telephone numbers entered into your telephone 'phone book'.*

Have your Aston Martin Roadside Assistance Membership Card ready.

Provide the Roadside Assistance Service Representative with:

- Your name
- The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), which is printed on your Roadside Assistance Membership Card. The VIN is also printed on a decal on the drivers side dashboard. This decal may be viewed from outside the car by looking in through the front windshield
- The vehicle location
- Where you are calling from, including a telephone number on which you may be contacted

## Further Information

The Roadside Assistance Service Representative will work with you to find the best solution to your concern. Please stay with the vehicle until assistance arrives.

See the separate brochure provided for full details of the Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme. The terms of the scheme may be changed without notice.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

# Aston Martin Warranty

|                                                 |     |                                                                                                     |      |                                                |      |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 Aston Martin Warranties.....                  | C.2 | 9 California Emissions Warranties .....                                                             | C.10 | 17 Aston Martin Extended Service Contract..... | C.17 |
| 2 New Vehicle Limited Warranty.....             | C.4 | 10 How do I get Service under the Emissions Warranties.....                                         | C.13 | Owner Details.....                             | C.18 |
| 3 New Vehicle Limited Warranty Statement .....  | C.5 | 11 How do I handle Emergency Repairs to make sure they do not affect the Emissions Warranties ..... | C.13 | Vehicle Details.....                           | C.18 |
| 4 What is not Covered under the Warranties..... | C.5 | 12 What Replacement Parts should I use.....                                                         | C.14 | Owner Warranty Transfer (3) .....              | C.19 |
| 5 Customer Satisfaction Campaigns .....         | C.7 | 13 Preserve Your Emissions Warranty .....                                                           | C.15 | Owner Warranty Transfer (2) .....              | C.19 |
| 6 Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty .....     | C.8 | 14 Customer Satisfaction .....                                                                      | C.15 | Owner Warranty Transfer (1) .....              | C.19 |
| 7 Emissions Defect Warranty .....               | C.8 | 15 The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program.....                                          | C.16 | Owner Warranty Transfer (6) .....              | C.21 |
| 8 Emissions Performance Warranty.....           | C.8 | 16 State Warranty Enforcement Laws .....                                                            | C.17 | Owner Warranty Transfer (5) .....              | C.21 |
|                                                 |     |                                                                                                     |      | Owner Warranty Transfer (4) .....              | C.21 |

# 1 Aston Martin Warranties

This chapter contains information essential for the understanding of the Aston Martin warranties and for the implementation of any necessary Warranty rectification. It is recommended that you read this chapter carefully to familiarize yourself with the benefits available under the various warranties.

## 1.1 Warranty Communications

Any communications regarding Warranty should initially be addressed to your Aston Martin Dealer. If necessary, you may communicate with Aston Martin at the appropriate address listed.

National After Sales Manager  
Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc.  
9920 Irvine Centre Drive  
Irvine  
CA 92618

Warranty Department  
Aston Martin Lagonda Limited  
Banbury Road  
Gaydon  
WARWICK  
Warwickshire  
CV35 0DB  
England

## 1.2 Warranties

All Aston Martin warranties are issued by Aston Martin Lagonda Limited on behalf of Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc., the sole authorized United States agent of Aston Martin vehicles.

The warranties provided herein are for the benefit of the original purchaser and any subsequent owner during the relevant Warranty Period (defined below) in the Serviced Countries (defined below).

An Aston Martin vehicle is built and homologated to support the Region for which it is manufactured and is compliant with the local regulatory requirements of that Region. As a result, the warranties cover Aston Martin vehicles that are built for and supplied to the Region.

For the purposes of this Owner’s Guide, 'Region means one of the following territories:

- the Americas, including the United States, Canada, and South America; or
- the United Kingdom, Europe, Russia and South Africa; or
- the Middle East, North Africa and India; or
- Asia Pacific, including China, Japan, Taiwan, Hong Kong, Singapore, Australia and New Zealand.

'**Serviced Countries**' means either: (a) any country in the Region from which your Aston Martin vehicle was purchased, where there is an Aston Martin authorised dealer or repairer; or (b) any country agreed in writing with Aston Martin.

The warranties provided herein are for the benefit of the original purchaser and any subsequent owner during the relevant Warranty Period (defined below). The warranties cover Aston Martin vehicles that are built for and supplied to the Region.

The Warranty period for all Warranties (defined below) for vehicles begin on the date of first retail sale, or on the date of entry into demonstrator service, whichever comes first.

---

**A summary of all Aston Martin warranties applicable to this vehicle (together the Warranties) are as follows:**

**a) New Vehicle Limited Warranty**

*Bumper to bumper*- Three years, unlimited mileage.

**b) Vehicle Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty**

*Period of cover* - Ten years, unlimited mileage.

**c) Vehicle Emission Warranties (Federal)**

*Emissions Defects Warranty*- Three years or 36,000 miles of vehicle use

*Certain emission parts*<sup>1</sup>- Eight years or 80,000 miles of vehicle use

*Emissions Performance Warranty*- Two years or 24,000 miles of vehicle use

---

<sup>1</sup>. Catalytic convertor, the electronic emissions control unit and / or the onboard emissions diagnostic device (required eight years or 80,000 mile (129,000 km) coverage per Clean Air Act).

**d) Vehicle Emission Warranties (Californian Vehicles)**

*Emissions Defect Warranty (Short Term)*- Three years or 50,000 miles of vehicle use

*Emissions Defect Warranty (Long Term)*<sup>2</sup>- Seven years or 70,000 miles of vehicle use

*Emissions Performance Warranty*- Three years or 50,000 miles of vehicle use

**1.3 Changes to Vehicles**

Aston Martin and its authorized dealers (the **'Dealers'**) reserve the right to make changes in or additions to vehicles built or sold by them at any time without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar changes or additions to vehicles previously built or sold.

---

<sup>2</sup>. These specific parts were selected on the basis of their estimated replacement cost at the time your vehicle was certified by the California Air Resources Board (CARB) for sale in California.

**1.4 Reservation of Rights**

Aston Martin and its Dealers reserve the right to provide post-Warranty repairs, conduct recalls, or extend the Warranty coverage period for certain vehicles or vehicle populations, at Aston Martin's sole discretion. The fact that Aston Martin provided such measures to a particular vehicle or vehicle population, does not in any way obligate Aston Martin to provide similar accommodations to other owners of similar vehicles.

**1.5 Condition**

As a fundamental condition of the Warranties, you are responsible for correctly using, maintaining and caring for your vehicle in accordance with the Aston Martin Owner's Guide (the **'Owner's Guide'**). Aston Martin recommends that you maintain copies of all maintenance records and receipts for review by Aston Martin.

## 2 New Vehicle Limited Warranty

### 2.1 Warranty Limitations

This New Vehicle Limited Warranty is the only express Warranty applicable to your vehicle. Aston Martin neither assumes, nor authorizes anyone to assume for it, any other obligation or liability in connection with this Warranty. No person, including Aston Martin employees or Dealers, can modify or waive any part of this Warranty.

#### a) Limitation of Remedies

Under this Warranty, it is agreed that the sole exclusive remedy against Aston Martin and its authorized Dealers shall be for the repair or replacement of defective parts as provided herein. The sole purpose of this exclusive remedy shall be to provide for the free repair and replacement of defective parts in the manner prescribed in this Warranty.

This exclusive remedy shall not be deemed to have failed its essential purpose so long as Aston Martin, through its authorized Dealers, is willing and able to repair or replace defective parts in the prescribed manner.

Aston Martin and its Dealers are not responsible to you for any time or income that you lose, any inconvenience you might be caused, the loss of your transportation or use of your vehicle, the cost of rental vehicles, fuel, telephone, travel, meals or lodging, the loss of personal or commercial property, the loss of revenue, or for any other incidental or consequential damages you may have.

Punitive, exemplary, or multiple damages can not be recovered unless applicable law prohibits their disclaimer. You may not bring any warranty-related claim as a class representative, a private attorney general, a member of a class of claimants or in any other representative capacity.

Aston Martin shall not be liable for any damages caused by delay in delivery or furnishing of any products and /or services.

#### b) Implied Warranties and Consequential Damages

Under the law of some States, you as the owner may be entitled to the benefit of the implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for intended purpose. These implied warranties are limited to the extent allowed by law to the time period covered by the written warranties, or the applicable time period provided by State Law, whichever period is shorter.

Some States do not permit a limitation on how long an implied warranty will last, or on the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation may not apply to you. This warranty gives owners specific legal rights, and they may also have other rights that vary from State to State.



### 3 New Vehicle Limited Warranty Statement

#### 3.1

Aston Martin warrants that during the Warranty period, if an Aston Martin vehicle is correctly operated and maintained by the user in accordance with the Maintenance chapter of the Owner's Guide, repairs required to correct defects in materials or workmanship will be performed without charge; any component covered by this Warranty found to be defective in materials or workmanship, will be repaired, or replaced, without charge. Your Aston Martin Dealer will repair the vehicle with genuine approved Aston Martin parts.

#### 3.2 Warranty Coverage

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty covers any original or OEM component of the Aston Martin vehicle that is defective during the basic Warranty period, with the exception of tires, the items listed under section 4.4, normal maintenance items and regularly scheduled maintenance parts and labor. The Warranty includes any part scheduled for routine replacement during the Warranty period only if it is defective. If a part fails at the same time it is due for replacement it is not covered by the Warranty.

### 4 What is not Covered under the Warranties

#### 4.1 Excluded Categories of Vehicle

The following categories of vehicle are excluded from the provisions of the Warranties:

- Vehicles sold for hire
- Vehicles used for motor sport, competition and track events (except Aston Martin organized and managed events)
- Vehicles that are incorrectly maintained

#### 4.2 Damage Caused by Accident, Alteration or Misuse

The Warranties do not cover:

- Damage caused by collision, fire, flood, theft, freezing, vandalism, riot, explosion, or objects striking the vehicle
- Misuse of the vehicle, such as driving over curbs, overloading, racing, or using the vehicle as a stationary power source
- Alterations or modifications of the vehicle (including changes to the body, chassis, or components) carried out on the vehicle, at any time during its lifetime, by non-approved repairers or body repair centers and shops, tampering with the vehicle, tampering with the emission systems or with other parts that affect these systems

- Disconnection or alteration of the odometer, or where the actual mileage cannot be determined due to the odometer being inoperative for an extended period of time
- Use of contaminated or incorrect fuel or fluids or application of unauthorized chemicals by the customer

#### 4.3 Damage Caused by Use or the Environment

Surface rust, deterioration and damage of paint, trim, upholstery and other appearance items that result from use and / or exposure to the elements are not covered under any of the Warranties.

The Warranties do not cover:

- Stone chips, scratches
- Lightning, hail damage
- Dints or dents
- Windstorm damage
- Road salt, tree sap
- Earthquake damage
- Bird and insect droppings
- Freezing, water or flood damage
- Cuts, burns, punctures or tears
- Windshield stress cracks
- Rodent damage

- Incorrect polishing of paint surface

#### 4.4 Damage Caused by Failure to Maintain or Incorrect Maintenance

Damage caused by failure to maintain the vehicle, incorrect maintenance of the vehicle, or using the wrong fuel, oil, lubricants, or fluids is not covered under the Warranties. Refer to the Specifications chapter of the Owner's Guide for correct fluid levels, and for information on the correct ways to maintain your vehicle.

Examples of important maintenance procedures that need to be done correctly are:

- Oil changes
- Cleaning and polishing
- Oils, lubricants and other fluids
- Engine tune-up
- Oil & air filters
- Wiper blades
- Brake pads and lining
- Tire rotation, inflation
- Clutch linings
- Wheel alignments and tire balancing

#### 4.5 Other Items and Conditions Not Covered by the Warranties

The Warranties do not cover:

- The installation or use of a non-Aston Martin part (other than a certified emissions part) or any part (Aston Martin or non-Aston Martin) designed for off-road use only installed after the vehicle leaves the control of Aston Martin, if the installed part fails or causes an Aston Martin part to fail
- Damage to, or caused by, non-approved accessories such as alarms, telephones
- Damage to, or caused by, non-approved snow chains or towing devices
- Damage caused by failure to maintain adequate levels of fuel in your vehicle
- Vehicles that have been labeled or branded as being 'dismantled', 'fire', 'flood', 'junk', 'rebuilt', 'reconstructed', 'salvaged' – this will void the Warranties
- Vehicles that have been determined as a 'total loss' by an insurance company, or other official body – this will void the Warranties

- Service adjustments, wear items and alignments after one (1) year or 10,000 miles, whichever occurs first
- Use of alternative fuels: Aston Martin does not recommend or approve of the use of Liquid Petroleum gas or Compressed Natural gas. Damage caused by the use of alternative fuels or fuel additives is not covered by the vehicle warranty
- Normal wear or worn out tires. Tires will not be replaced (unless required by a warranty repair) for wear or damage including a) tire damage from road hazard such as cuts, snags, bruises, bulges, puncture, and impact breaks; and b) tire damage due to under or over inflation, tire chain use, racing, spinning (including when stuck in snow or mud), incorrect mounting or dismounting, or tire repair
- Vehicles that have had the odometer disconnected, altered, or inoperative for an extended period of time with the result that the actual mileage cannot be determined

#### 4.6 Wear and tear Items

Items that are subject to wear and tear are generally divided into two categories, namely those specified for replacement or adjustment during scheduled maintenance and those that require replacement or adjustment dependent upon conditions of use.

### a) Scheduled Maintenance Items

The items listed below are covered by the Vehicle Warranty up to the first scheduled change point that replacement or adjustment is required during scheduled maintenance operations.

- Drive Belts
- Spark Plugs
- Oil, air, pollen and fuel filters

 *The period of warranty cover for any item may not exceed the time and distance limitation of the vehicle warranty.*

### b) Other Items

The items listed below are recognized as having a limited service life or are subject to wear or damage. However, these items are covered by the vehicle warranty for up to one year or the first service, which ever occurs first.

- Wiper Blades
- All Light bulbs

 *Xenon headlamp light bulbs and instrumentation light bulbs are covered by the full vehicle warranty.*

- Wheel alignment and balancing

- Adjustments, including but not limited to: headlamp and hinged panel adjustments, suspension tightening, steering geometry adjustments, emission and fuel systems checks and parking brake cable adjustments
- Remote transmitter batteries

 *Brake pads, brake rotors and other friction related components are not covered when replacement is due to wear and tear, but they are covered against manufacturing defects for the duration of the Vehicle Warranty.*

### c) Consumables

Replacement or 'top-up' of consumable fluids, e.g. oils, anti-freeze, brake fluid, windshield wash solution and refrigerant, is only covered when they are used as part of a warranty repair.

## 5 Customer Satisfaction Campaigns

In order to maintain a high level of customer confidence and satisfaction with Aston Martin products, Aston Martin may periodically determine that certain service procedures are necessary, and will assume costs for same, in whole or in part, independent of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. When repairs to your vehicle are covered by the terms of one of these policy adjustments, your Aston Martin Dealer will advise you of the extent to which Aston Martin will pay either for parts, or for labor, or both.

If you have a question regarding a possible extra-Warranty adjustment, an authorized Aston Martin Dealer or Aston Martin can provide the details when the year, model and vehicle identification number (VIN) are supplied.

Aston Martin reserves the right to make modifications in vehicles manufactured or sold by them at any time without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar modifications in vehicles previously manufactured or sold by them.

## 6 Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty

The vehicle bodywork is protected by an Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty. Should any part of the bodywork of the Aston Martin vehicle be perforated the panel(s) affected by the perforation will be repaired or replaced. The term ‘perforation’ means a hole that penetrates from the inner surface of a body panel or box section outwards. A pre-condition of supporting this Warranty is an annual Dealer inspection.

## 7 Emissions Defect Warranty

### 7.1 Federal Requirements

Aston Martin provides coverage under the Emissions Defect Warranty (including labor and diagnosis) for repairs of emissions related parts which become defective on vehicles with the following years of service or mileage (whichever occurs first):

| Parts                                | Years in Service | Mileage |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|---------|
| Emissions Related Parts              | 3                | 36,000  |
| Certain Emissions Parts <sup>1</sup> | 8                | 80,000  |

<sup>1</sup>. Means the catalytic converter, the electronic emissions control unit (PCM) and / or the onboard emissions diagnostic device.

During the Warranty coverage period, Aston Martin warrants that:

- Your vehicle or engine is designed, built and equipped to meet (at the time it is sold) the applicable emissions regulations of the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
- Your vehicle or engine is free from defects in factory-supplied Materials or workmanship that could prevent it from conforming with applicable EPA regulations
- You will not be charged for repair, replacement, or adjustment of defective Emissions Related Parts (defined under section 8.2 (What is Covered))

## 8 Emissions Performance Warranty

### 8.1 Federal Requirements

If your vehicle is registered in a State where the State or Local Government has an EPA - approved inspection and maintenance program, any repairs which are required on your vehicle may also be covered under the Emissions Performance Warranty if your vehicle has the following years service or mileage (whichever occurs first) and if you meet certain conditions noted below:

| Parts                                | Years in Service | Mileage |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|---------|
| Emissions Related Parts              | 2                | 24,000  |
| Certain Emissions Parts <sup>1</sup> | 8                | 80,000  |

<sup>1</sup>. Means the catalytic converter, the electronic emissions control unit (PCM) and / or the onboard emissions diagnostic device.

Under the Emissions Performance Warranty, Aston Martin will repair, replace, or adjust (with no charge for labor, diagnosis, or parts) any emissions control device or system, if you meet all of the following conditions:

- You have maintained and operated your vehicle according to the instructions on correct care and scheduled maintenance contained in the Owner’s Guide

- Your vehicle fails to conform, during the warranty coverage period to the applicable national EPA standards, as determined by an EPA approved inspection and maintenance program
- You are subject to a penalty or sanction under local, State or Federal Law because your vehicle has failed to conform to the emissions standards (a penalty or sanction includes being denied the right to use your vehicle)
- Your vehicle has not been tampered with, misused, or abused  
The Emissions Performance Warranty will not apply to your vehicle if the diagnosis on your vehicle shows your vehicle will pass the applicable State or Local Government test using test procedures and standards set by the EPA

## 8.2 What is Covered

If the following parts contain an emissions- related defect (an **‘Emissions Related Part’**) they will be covered by both the Emissions Defect Warranty (set out in section 7) and the Emissions Performance Warranty:

- Air and Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensor
- Air Induction System
- Altitude Compensation System
- Catalytic Converter

- Cold Start Enrichment System
- Controls for Deceleration
- Electronic Ignition System
- Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches
- Engine Coolant Thermostat Assembly
- Engine Control Module
- Evaporative Emission Control System
- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) Valve, Spacer, Plate and Associated Parts
- Exhaust Heat Control Valve
- Exhaust Manifold and gasket
- Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor
- Fuel Injection System
- Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
- Fuel Tank & Fuel Delivery Module
- Ignition Coil or Control Module
- Intake Manifold
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)
- System PCV System and Oil Filler Cap
- Secondary Air Injection Valve, Secondary Air Injection pump and Associated Parts
- Spark Control Components

- Spark Plugs and Ignition Coils and Wires
- Throttle Body Assembly
- Transmission Control Module
- Volume Air Flow Sensor

 *Some items and equipment in this list may not be installed to this vehicle and therefore may not be applicable.*

Also covered by the Emissions Defect Warranty and the Emissions Performance Warranty are all emissions-related bulbs, hoses, clamps, brackets, tubes, gaskets, seals, belts, connectors, and wiring harnesses that are used with components in the list of parts set out above.

## 8.3 Parts Replaced on Regular Maintenance Schedules

Parts that should be replaced on a certain recommended maintenance schedule, remain under warranty until, (a) the first replacement time that is specified under Service in your Owner’s Guide or, (b) the time or mileage limits of the Federal Defect and Performance Warranties (whichever occurs first). Aston Martin maintains a complete list of parts covered by Emissions Warranties. For more details about the specific parts covered by the Emissions Defect Warranty, contact Aston Martin or Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc.1.1 Warranty Communications

## 8.4 What is Not Covered

Aston Martin may deny you coverage under the Emissions Warranties if your vehicle or a part does not contain an emissions-related defect or has failed due to abuse, neglect, incorrect maintenance, unapproved modifications, or it concerns any items included in section 4 (What is not covered under the Warranties).

## 9 California Emissions Warranties

### 9.1 Your Warranty Rights and Obligations

This Warranty is applicable if your vehicle is both:

- a) Registered in California, or other States adopting California emission and warranty regulations<sup>1</sup>.
- b) Certified for sale in California as indicated on the vehicle emission control information label.

Aston Martin and the California Air Resources Board are pleased to explain the emission control system Warranty on your Aston Martin vehicle.

In California, new motor vehicles must be designed, built, and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards.

Aston Martin must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed under the Manufactures' Warranty Coverage, provided there has been no abuse, neglect, or incorrect maintenance of your vehicle.

---

<sup>1</sup> Other States adopting California emissions and warranty regulations: Passenger car & light-duty trucks (up to 8,500 pounds GVWR) – California, Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Jersey, Oregon, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Vermont, Washington and any other States that adopt the California emissions and warranty regulations from time to time.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the fuel injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter, and the engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors, and other emissions-related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exists, Aston Martin will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts, and labor.

### 9.2 Manufacturer's Warranty Coverage

For vehicles eligible for coverage under the California Emissions Warranty, if your vehicle is:

**a) Three years in service or has mileage of 50,000 mile (whichever first occurs):**

- If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Aston Martin to make sure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your **Emission Control System Performance Warranty**
- If an emission related part (as defined in section 9.4) on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Aston Martin. This is your **Short-Term Emission Control System Defects Warranty**

**b) Seven years in service or has mileage of 70,000 mile (whichever first occurs):**

- If an emission related part (as defined in section 9.5) on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Aston Martin. This is your **Long-Term Emission Control System Defects Warranty**.

### 9.3 Owner's Warranty Responsibilities

As the vehicle owner or lessee, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in the Owner's Guide. Aston Martin recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Aston Martin cannot deny warranty coverage solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to check the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to an Aston Martin Dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days. Aston Martin may deny warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, or unapproved modifications.

If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and / or responsibilities, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this Warranty, you may contact Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc. After Sales Department:

Tel: (949) 379 3104

or the California Air Resources Board at:

State of California Air Resources Board  
9528 Telstar Avenue  
El Monte  
California 91731

### 9.4 What is Covered under the Short Term Emission Control System Defects Warranty

The parts in the following list are covered by Emission Control System Defects Warranties, which apply to every California model vehicle manufactured from, and including, 2004.

- Air and Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensor
- Air Induction System
- Altitude Compensation System
- Catalytic Converter
- Cold Start Enrichment System
- Controls for Deceleration
- Electronic Ignition System
- Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches
- Engine Coolant Thermostat Assembly
- Engine Control Module
- Evaporative Emission Control System
- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) Valve, Spacer, Plate and Associated Parts

- Exhaust Heat Control Valve
- Exhaust Manifold and gasket
- Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor
- Fuel Injection System
- Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
- Fuel Tank & Fuel Delivery Module
- Ignition Coil or Control Module
- Intake Manifold Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) System
- PCV System and Oil Filler Cap
- Secondary Air Injection Valve, Secondary Air Injection pump and Associated Parts
- Spark Control Components
- Spark Plugs and Ignition Coils and Wires
- Throttle Body Assembly
- Transmission Control Module
- Volume Air Flow Sensor

 Some items and equipment in this list may not be installed to this vehicle and therefore may not be applicable.

## 9.5 What is Covered under the Long Term Emission Control System Defects Warranty

| Part Description              | V8 Vantage | DB9 / DBS / Rapide |
|-------------------------------|------------|--------------------|
| Camshaft Position Sensor      | x          |                    |
| Carbon Canister               | x          | x                  |
| Catalytic Converters          | x          | x                  |
| Engine Control Module         | x          | x                  |
| Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensors    | x          |                    |
| Exhaust Manifolds             | x          | x                  |
| Fuel Delivery Module          | x          | x                  |
| Fuel Level Sender             |            | x                  |
| Fuel Rail Assembly            | x          | x                  |
| Fuel Tank                     | x          | x                  |
| Inlet Manifold                | x          |                    |
| Rear Exhaust Muffler          | x          |                    |
| Secondary Air Injection Hoses | x          |                    |
| Secondary Air injection Pump  | x          |                    |
| Throttle Assembly             | x          | x                  |



## 10 How do I get Service under the Emissions Warranties

---

To get service under your Emissions Warranties, take your vehicle to any Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible after it has failed an EPA - approved test or a California Smog Check inspection. You must show the Dealer the document that states your vehicle has failed the test.

The Dealer will decide whether the repair is covered by the Warranty. If the Dealer cannot make a decision with regard to coverage under your Emissions Warranty, the Dealer shall forward the query to Aston Martin.

Aston Martin shall procure to make a final decision within 30 days after you bring your vehicle in for repair (The decision will be made within a shorter time if the law requires you to have the vehicle repaired more quickly in order to avoid additional penalties.).

However, if you request a delay, agree to a delay, or if a delay is caused by an event for which neither Aston Martin nor your Aston Martin Dealer is responsible, the deadline for determination does not have to be met by Aston Martin.

---

If a question about Emissions Warranty coverage is referred to Aston Martin, you will be notified by Aston Martin in writing if your claim for Emissions Warranty coverage is denied. The notice will explain the basis for denying your claim.

## 11 How do I handle Emergency Repairs to make sure they do not affect the Emissions Warranties

---

Aston Martin strives to make sure that services are available to conduct emergency repairs on your vehicle when necessary. However, occasionally, Aston Martin may not be able to perform emergency repairs for reasons outside of its control.

If your vehicle requires an emergency repair on Emission Related Parts and an Aston Martin Dealer is 'unavailable or unable to perform the necessary repairs' (defined below), you may, but only as a last resort, procure repairs by someone other than an authorized Aston Martin Dealer (a '**Third Party**').

If the Dealer or, failing a decision by the Dealer, Aston Martin, determines that such repair is covered under Warranty, Aston Martin will reimburse you for the cost of such repairs, including diagnosis.

Make sure that you obtain and take the following to your Aston Martin Dealer within 30 days of the repairs having been performed:

- a) The parts that are replaced, and
- b) A receipt for the work

The term 'unavailable or unable to perform the necessary repairs' means:

- If you have informed Aston Martin of the required emergency repairs and either Aston Martin or the Aston Martin Emergency Service roadside assistance service provider is unable to take your vehicle to an accessible authorized Aston Martin Dealer
- If an authorized Dealer is unable to perform the necessary repairs
- If an authorized Dealer does not have the warranted part required to perform the necessary repairs

Aston Martin shall only reimburse you if the repairs are conducted by a Third Party within 30 days from the time you first bring your vehicle to the Dealer for repairs and the time it is repaired by the Third Party.

Any repair that is not completed within the 30 day period may (at Aston Martin's discretion) constitute an emergency and any equivalent replacement part may be used in an emergency situation. If Aston Martin determines that the repair is covered under Warranty, Aston Martin will reimburse you for the repair expenses if:

a) It does not exceed the Aston Martin's suggested retail price for all warranted parts that are replaced and

b) The labor charges do not exceed the Aston Martin's recommended time allowance for the Warranty repair and the labor charges are reasonable and similar to those charged by a repairer of similar geographical location

## 12 What Replacement Parts should I use

Aston Martin recommends that you use genuine Aston Martin replacement parts. However, when you are having non-Warranty work done on your vehicle, you may choose to use non-Aston Martin parts of equivalent specification.

If you decide to use non-Aston Martin parts, make sure that they are equivalent to Aston Martin parts in performance, quality and durability. If you use replacement parts that are not equivalent to Aston Martin parts, your vehicle's emissions control systems may not work as effectively, and you may jeopardize your Emissions Warranty coverage.

 *The maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices or systems, the cost of which is not covered by the Warranties, can be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using non-Aston Martin parts.*

For vehicles within the Warranty period, Aston Martin will repair at no cost to the owner, under the Federal Emissions Warranty, covered emission failures caused by correctly installed Aston Martin parts or non-Aston Martin parts that have been 'certified' by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Aston Martin is not responsible for the cost of repairing any emission failures caused by non-Aston Martin parts that have not been 'certified' by the EPA.

## 13 Preserve Your Emissions Warranty

If you do not maintain your vehicle correctly, Aston Martin may have the right to deny you coverage under any of its Emissions Warranties. To have repairs made under the Emissions Warranties, you may be required to show that you have followed Aston Martin's instructions on correctly maintaining and using your vehicle, in accordance with the instructions set out in the Owner's Guide. Make sure that you save your service receipts and keep accurate records of any maintenance work performed.

If you are not satisfied with the handling of a Warranty matter, you may contact Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc. If you need more information about getting service under the Federal Emissions Performance Warranty, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this Warranty, you may contact:

Director Vehicle Program and Compliance Division (6505J)  
Environmental Protection Agency  
401 M Street, S.W  
Washington  
DC 20460

## 14 Customer Satisfaction

If you are not satisfied with any Warranty repairs performed by an authorized Aston Martin Dealer and feel that you have a legitimate Warranty concern that is not being addressed to your satisfaction, follow the steps recommended below for the best resolution.

### **Step 1: Raise your concerns with the authorized Dealer Service Manager.**

If you feel it would help clarify any concern, you should accompany the Service Manager on test drive of vehicle to demonstrate your issues and concerns. Often simply voicing your concerns directly to a manager or with the trained technician results in a satisfactory repair.

### **Step 2: If you are still not satisfied, contact dealership owner or General Manager.**

Often raising an unresolved issue to a General Manager will benefit all involved and bring a focussed effort from all parties involved.

### **Step 3: If you are still not satisfied, bring concerns to Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc. Regional After Sales Manager or Operations Manager.**

All authorized Aston Martin Dealers have the contact details of the relevant After Sales and Operations Managers. Ask for the Aston Martin contact information and it will be gladly supplied.

### **Step 4: If you are still not satisfied, either:**

#### **a) Seek arbitration**

All disputes relating to the Warranty or the Extended Service Contract shall be resolved by binding arbitration under the Rules of Commercial Arbitration of the American Arbitration Association including its Supplementary Procedures for Consumer Related Disputes, before a single arbitrator who shall be bound by the terms of this Document. To maintain the highest quality of service and for staff training purposes, telephone calls to Aston Martin may be monitored and / or recorded.

#### **b) If your dispute is in the State of California, contact the Better Business Bureau (BBB)**

 *The BBB program is only in effect in the State of California, but steps one through three should be followed for quickest result.*

As a final step to make sure that your concerns are being fairly considered, Aston Martin has agreed to participate in a dispute settlement program administered by the BBB, at no cost to the customer.

Refer to section 15 for further details of the BBB.

## 15 The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program

(California only)

The Better Business Bureau (BBB) works with manufacturers and their customers in an attempt to reach a mutually acceptable resolution of any Warranty related concerns. If a Warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined in Customer Satisfaction (Refer to '14 Customer Satisfaction', page C.15), you may be eligible to participate in the BBB Auto Line Program.

The BBB Auto Line Program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Aston Martin to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation and your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process and the BBB will schedule an arbitration hearing so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

You are not bound by the decision, but should you choose to accept the BBB Auto Line decision, Aston Martin shall abide by the accepted decision as well.

Disputes submitted to the BBB Auto Line Program are usually decided within 40 days after you file your claim with BBB. If you wish to use the program and you qualify for participation, you will be required to provide the following information:

- Your name and address
- The vehicle identification number (VIN)
- The make, model and year of your vehicle
- A description of the problem with your vehicle

BBB AUTO LINE will also ask you for other information that may help resolve your concerns, such as the purchase price of your vehicle, the vehicle's current mileage, and copies of repair orders.

Upon receipt of such information, BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You are required to resort to BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies under the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. § 2301 et seq. To the extent permitted by the applicable State 'Lemon Law', you are also required to resort to BBB AUTO LINE before exercising any rights or seeking remedies under the 'Lemon Law'. If you choose to seek remedies that are not created by the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or the applicable State 'Lemon Law', you are not required to first use BBB AUTO LINE.

For more information about BBB AUTO LINE, including current eligibility standards, call 1-800-955-5100, visit the BBB website at [www.lemonlaw.bbb.org](http://www.lemonlaw.bbb.org), or write to the BBB at:

BBB AUTO LINE  
4200 Wilson Boulevard  
Suite 800 Arlington  
VA 22203

## 16 State Warranty Enforcement Laws

These State laws (sometimes called ‘**lemon laws**’) allow owners to receive a replacement vehicle or a refund of the purchase price, under certain circumstances. The laws vary from State to State.

To the extent your State Law allows, Aston Martin requires that you first send us a written notification of any defects or non-conformities that you have experienced with your vehicle. This will give us the opportunity to make any necessary repairs before you pursue the remedies provided by your State’s law.

In other States, where not specifically required by State Law, Aston Martin requests that you send us written notification to:

National After Sales Manager  
Aston Martin Lagonda of North America Inc.  
9920 Irvine Center Drive  
Irvine CA 92618

## 17 Aston Martin Extended Service Contract

You may purchase an Aston Martin Extended Service Contract (ESC) which shall protect your vehicle for an extended period after the expiry of your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The ESC provides:

- a) Protection against covered repair costs<sup>1</sup>.
- b) Aston Martin Emergency Assistance roadside support.
- c) Zero deductible, which means that you will not pay for covered repairs in the case of a legitimate claim.
- d) 12 or 24 months coverage across the USA and Canada.

Aston Martin offers various ESC products of varying levels of cover dependent upon the age and mileage of the vehicle. All vehicles must pass an Aston Martin multi-point inspection prior to the registration of an ESC on a vehicle.

Please note that the ESC Terms and Conditions shall apply. For a full list of the ESC Terms and Conditions, or if you would like to arrange such cover, talk to your nearest participating Aston Martin Dealer.

---

<sup>1</sup>. Wear items, neglect, force majeure and damage caused by outside influence are excluded, and shall be left to the sole discretion of Aston Martin.



ASTON MARTIN

| Owner Details  | Vehicle Details                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name:          | Registration Plate No.:                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Address:       | VIN No.:                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| :              | Engine No.:                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| :              | Warranty Start Date:                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Zip Code:      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                | If the vehicle is sold, the benefits of any un-expired portion of the warranties can be transferred to the new owner.<br>The new owner should complete a ‘tear off’ sheet (next page) and send the new details to: |
| Signature:     | Aston Martin Warranty Department                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Date:          | Aston Martin Lagonda Limited                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| (Dealer Stamp) | Banbury Road,<br>Gaydon,<br>WARWICK<br>Warwickshire,<br>CV35 0DB,<br>England                                                                                                                                       |



ASTON MARTIN

**Owner Warranty Transfer (3)**

Registration plate No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage (mile):

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

:

:

:

Zip Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature:

Date:

**Owner Warranty Transfer (2)**

Registration plate No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage (mile):

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

:

:

:

Zip Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature:

Date:

**Owner Warranty Transfer (1)**

Registration plate No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage (mile):

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

:

:

:

Zip Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature:

Date:



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



**Owner Warranty Transfer (6)**

Registration plate No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage (mile):

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

:

:

:

Zip Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature:

Date:

**Owner Warranty Transfer (5)**

Registration plate No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage (mile):

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

:

:

:

Zip Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature:

Date:

**Owner Warranty Transfer (4)**

Registration plate No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage (mile):

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

:

:

:

Zip Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature:

Date:



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

# Authorised Body Repairers

|                 |     |                        |      |                    |      |
|-----------------|-----|------------------------|------|--------------------|------|
| Australia ..... | D.2 | Germany .....          | D.7  | Norway .....       | D.11 |
| Austria .....   | D.2 | Hong Kong .....        | D.8  | Portugal .....     | D.12 |
| Belgium .....   | D.3 | Italy .....            | D.8  | Russia .....       | D.12 |
| Canada .....    | D.3 | Japan .....            | D.9  | Saudi Arabia ..... | D.12 |
| China .....     | D.3 | Kuwait .....           | D.9  | Singapore .....    | D.13 |
| Denmark .....   | D.4 | Lebanon .....          | D.10 | South Africa ..... | D.13 |
| Dubai .....     | D.4 | Monaco .....           | D.10 | Spain .....        | D.13 |
| England .....   | D.4 | Netherlands .....      | D.10 | Switzerland .....  | D.14 |
| France .....    | D.7 | New Zealand .....      | D.11 | USA .....          | D.14 |
|                 |     | Northern Ireland ..... | D.11 | Scotland .....     | D.16 |

Australia

| Cat A | Exclusive Body Werks                                                                                                                      |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | 23 George Street, Granville, Sydney, New South Wales 2142<br>Phone: +61 2 9760 0353<br>Associated Dealer: Trivett Classic Garage Pty Ltd. |
| Cat B | File Finish                                                                                                                               |
|       | 180 Christmas St., Fairfield, VIC 3078<br>Phone: +61 3 9555 3522<br>Associated Dealer: Trivett Classic Aston Martin Melbourne             |
| Cat B | Glenelg Crash Repairs                                                                                                                     |
|       | 222 Brighton Road, Somerton Park, South<br>Phone: +61 (0)3 9415 8181<br>Associated Dealer: Solitaire Aston Martin                         |
| Cat A | Gosney's                                                                                                                                  |
|       | 4 Anne Street, Southport, Gold Coast, Queensland 4215<br>Phone: 0061 7 5532 3166<br>Associated Dealer: Southport Motors                   |

| Cat B | Lombardi Brothers                                                                                                                        |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | 11 Charles Street, Bentley, Perth, Western Australia, 6106<br>Phone: +00 61 89356-1013<br>Associated Dealership: Barbagallo Aston Martin |

Austria

| Cat A | Dingl Christian                                                                                            |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | Wiener Strasse 28, 7052 Muellendorf<br>Phone: 0043268263822<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Vienna  |
| Cat B | Kuhleitner, Karosserie - Spenglerei Kühleitner                                                             |
|       | 5020 Salzburg, Samergasse 23<br>Phone: 0043 662 - 87 4 377<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Salzburg |

Belgium

|       |                                                                                                           |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat B | <b>Carroserie Adriaenssens</b>                                                                            |
|       | Rijksweg 55, 2870 Nuurs<br>Phone: 031 886 6368<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Belgium             |
| Cat B | <b>Carrosserie Van Den Eede H &amp; B</b>                                                                 |
|       | Brandstraat 31, 2800 Willebroek<br>Phone: 0032 3 886 78 49<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Belgium |

Canada

|       |                                                                                                                    |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat A | <b>Auto Bugatti</b>                                                                                                |
|       | 11355 Cote de Liesse, Dorval, Quebec H9P 1B2<br>Phone: 001 514 636 7818<br>Associated Dealership: Decarie Motors   |
| Cat B | <b>Burrard Autostrasse Collision Ltd.</b>                                                                          |
|       | 2185 Pine Street, Vancouver B.C.<br>Phone:<br>Associated Dealership: MCL Motor Cars                                |
| Cat B | <b>Grand Touring Collision Centre</b>                                                                              |
|       | 1214 Caledonia Road, Toronto, Ontario<br>Phone: 001 416 783 3327<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin of Ontario |

China

|       |                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat A | <b>Aston Martin Beijing</b>                                                                                                                                              |
|       | No 1 Jing Gang Lu, Jin Zhan Xiang, Chao Yang District, Beijing, 100018<br>Phone:<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Beijing                                          |
| Cat A | <b>Aston Martin Shanghai Body Shop</b>                                                                                                                                   |
|       | Shanghai Richcom Traffic Equipment Lease Service Co. Ltd., 8685 Zhong Chun Road, Shanghai, 201101<br>Phone: 021-34100442<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Shanghai |

Denmark

| Cat B | Brdr Elkjær                                                                                              |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | Hejrevej 33, 2400 København NV<br>Phone: 0045 38 10 45 40<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Denmark |
| Cat B | Das Karrosseri                                                                                           |
|       | Krondalvej 11, 2610 Rødovre<br>Phone: 0045 44 84 84 85<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Denmark    |

Dubai

| Cat A | Al Habtoor                                                                             |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | PO Box 19879, Dubai, UAE<br>Phone: 00971 4 691110<br>Associated Dealership: Al Habtoor |

England

| Cat B | Abridge Body Centre                                                                                                               |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | Abridge Body Centre Langston Road, Loughton, Essex, IG10 3TQ<br>Phone: 07818016350<br>Associated Dealership: Lancaster Seven Oaks |
| Cat B | Ambassador Car Recovery Ltd.                                                                                                      |
|       | Unit 6, Forsyth Road, Woking, Surrey, GU21 5SB<br>Phone: 01483 747752<br>Associated Dealership: HWM                               |
| Cat A | Aston Martin Works Service                                                                                                        |
|       | Tickford Street, Newport Pagnell, MK16 9AN<br>Phone: 01908 619264<br>Associated Dealership: ASTON MARTIN                          |
| Cat B | Autobody Care                                                                                                                     |
|       | 104 Gelderd Road, Leeds, LS 12 6BY<br>Phone: 0113 257 2000<br>Associated Dealership: JCT 600 Leodis Court                         |

|              |                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>Balgores Motors</b>                                                                                                                    |
|              | 1 Bryant Avenue, Romford, Essex, RM3 0AP<br>Phone: 01708 344122<br>Associated Dealership: Grange Aston Martin                             |
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>BlueBell Bodyshop</b>                                                                                                                  |
|              | Brooke Park, Lower Meadow Road, Handforth, Cheshire, SK 9 3LP<br>Phone: 0161 486 2080<br>Associated Dealership: Stratstone of Wilmslow    |
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>Bodytechnics Ltd.</b>                                                                                                                  |
|              | 381 Sykes Road, Trading Estate, Slough, Berkshire, SL1 4SP<br>Phone: 01753 505900<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Sales of Mayfair |
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>Chartwell Bodycraft Chartwell Ltd.</b>                                                                                                 |
|              | Chartwell House, 1 Brunel Parkway, Derby, DE24 8HR<br>Phone: 01332 340972<br>Associated Dealership: Paramount Derby                       |

|              |                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>Chiltern Aston Centre</b>                                                                                                        |
|              | Leyhill Road, Bovingdon, Hertfordshire, HP3 0NW<br>Phone: 01442 833177<br>Associated Dealership: Chiltern Aston Centre              |
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>City Centre Car Care Co.</b>                                                                                                     |
|              | 260 Bradford Street, Digbeth, Deritend, Birmingham, B12 0QY<br>Phone: 0121 766 7699<br>Associated Dealership: Stratstone Birmingham |
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>Cougar Direct</b>                                                                                                                |
|              | Crescent Road, Luton, Bedfordshire, LU2 0AR<br>Phone: 01582 540900<br>Associated Dealership: Grange Aston Martin Welwyn             |
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>Davies Motor Company Ltd.</b>                                                                                                    |
|              | Hadfield Close, Leckwith, Cardiff, CF11 8BD<br>Phone: 029 20394407<br>Associated Dealership: Stratstone Cardiff                     |

|              |                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>DLC Cars</b>                                                                                                                 |
|              | 1 - 11 St. Georges Road, Reading, Berkshire, RG30 2RG<br>Phone: 01189 505004<br>Associated Dealership: Lancaster Reading        |
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>Evans Halshaw Bodycare Centre</b>                                                                                            |
|              | Hepburn Gardens, Felling, Gateshead, NE10 0AD<br>Phone: 0191 495 4300<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Houghton Le Spring |
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>Fairweather Autoshine</b>                                                                                                    |
|              | Vulcan Works, Water Lane, Exeter, EX2 8BY<br>Phone: 01392 420000<br>Associated Dealership: Grange of Exeter                     |
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>Harwoods</b>                                                                                                                 |
|              | Seven Oaks Billinghamurst, West Sussex, RH14 9AZ<br>Phone: 01403 787020<br>Associated Dealership: Harwoods                      |

|              |                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>JCT600 Body Clinic</b>                                                                                                                                      |
|              | 320 Sticker Lane, Bradford, BD4 8RS<br>Phone: 01274 778600<br>Associated Dealership: JCT 600 Leodis Court                                                      |
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>Lancaster Cambridge Body Centre</b>                                                                                                                         |
|              | High St., Harston, Cambridge, CB2 5QE<br>Phone: 01223 872872<br>Associated Dealership: Lancaster Cambridge                                                     |
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>Lloyds Autobody</b>                                                                                                                                         |
|              | Unit 11, Ringway Trading Estate, Shadowmoss Road,<br>Wythenshawe, Manchester, M22 5LH<br>Phone: 0161 437 9911<br>Associated Dealership: Stratstone of Wilmslow |
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>MKG Accident Repair Centres</b>                                                                                                                             |
|              | Cavendsh Road, Stevenage, Herts, SG1 2ET<br>Phone: 01438 720720<br>Associated Dealership: Grange Aston Martin Welwyn                                           |

|              |                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>Panelwise of Weybridge</b>                                                                                                                            |
|              | The Latehouse, Hamm Moor Lane, Weybridge Business Park,<br>Surrey, KT15 2SD<br>Phone: 01932 856460<br>Associated Dealership: HWM                         |
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>Stratstone Body Repair Centre</b>                                                                                                                     |
|              | Unit 11, Hayes Trading Estate, Hingley Road, Lye, Stourbridge,<br>B63 2RR<br>Phone: 01384 426070<br>Associated Dealership: Stratstone Birmingham         |
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>Stratton Motor Company</b>                                                                                                                            |
|              | Ipswich Road, Long Stratton, Norwich, NR15 2XJ<br>Phone: 01508 530491<br>Associated Dealership: Stratton Motor Company                                   |
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>The Autoshop Accident Repair Centre Ltd.</b>                                                                                                          |
|              | Unit 22, Hopemills Industrial Park, London Road, Briscoombe,<br>Stroud, GL5 2SE<br>Phone: 01453 882844<br>Associated Dealership: Broughtons Aston Martin |

|              |                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>Tonbridge Repair Centre</b>                                                                                                               |
|              | Units 8-9 Cannon Bridge works, Cannon Lane, Tonbridge, Kent<br>TN9 1PP<br>Phone: 01732 771117<br>Associated Dealership: Lancaster Seven Oaks |



## France

| Cat A | Aston Martin Paris                                                                                              |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | 6-10 rue de la Cavalerie, 75015, Paris<br>Phone: 0033 1 53 86 7272<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Paris |
| Cat B | Carrosserie de Los Angeles                                                                                      |
|       | 10, rue de Breteil, 33320 Eysines<br>Phone: 0033 556 28 52 17<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Bordeaux   |

## Germany

| Cat A | Alfred Krauthahn GmbH                                                                                                   |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | Nestorstrasse 27-29, D-10709 Berlin-Wilmersdorf<br>Phone: 0049 30 896 000 31<br>Associated Dealership: Krauthahn Berlin |
| Cat B | Autolackierung Dominante GmbH                                                                                           |
|       | Grosser Haingraben 9, 65779 Kelkheim<br>Phone: 0049 619 5 67477<br>Associated Dealership: Autohaus Kronberg             |
| Cat B | Bündesmann                                                                                                              |
|       | Suitbertusstrabe 81, 40223, Düsseldorf<br>Phone: 0049 02131 9227 36<br>Associated Dealership: Moll GmbH                 |
| Cat B | Ellerbrock GmbH                                                                                                         |
|       | Rudolf Diesel Strasse 2, 28816 Stuhr<br>Phone: 0049 421870181<br>Associated Dealership: Tamsen Bremen                   |

| Cat B | FA Heller GmbH                                                                                                              |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | Sandhoferstr, 199-201, 68307 Mannheim<br>Phone: 0049 621 772317<br>Associated Dealership: Kroymans Autohaus Mannheim GmbH   |
| Cat B | Gerrards KG + Sohn                                                                                                          |
|       | Adalbertsteinweg 220, 52066 Aachen<br>Phone: 0049 241 501168<br>Associated Dealership: L Hauswirth Exclusive Car GmbH       |
| Cat A | Preisacher Unfallinstandsetzung                                                                                             |
|       | Hirschbachweg 9c, 85659 Forstern, Munich<br>Phone: 0049 81 24 / 7015<br>Associated Dealership: Autohaus Avalon München GmbH |
| Cat B | Premiumcars Peters                                                                                                          |
|       | Phone: 0049 231 91204048<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Dortmund                                                    |

Hong Kong

|       |                                                                                                              |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat B | <b>Schwabengarage AG Stuttgart</b>                                                                           |
|       | Cannstatter Strasse 46, 70190 Stuttgart<br>Phone: 0711 2803 2400<br>Associated Dealership: Schwabengarage AG |
| Cat B | <b>Aspelohe</b>                                                                                              |
|       | 36 22848 Norderstedt<br>Phone: 0049 40 5234767<br>Associated Dealership: Tamsen Hamberg                      |

|       |                                                         |
|-------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat A | <b>Shun Hing Motor</b>                                  |
|       | Phone:<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin (HK) Ltd. |

Italy

|       |                                                                                                                        |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat B | <b>Csrozzeria Vigentina SNC</b>                                                                                        |
|       | Via Rutilia 10/8 20141 Milano<br>Phone: 0039 02/56810266<br>Associated Dealership: Milan                               |
| Cat A | <b>F.lli De Clementi &amp; Snc</b>                                                                                     |
|       | Carrozzeria Autorizzata, Via Fiano, 14, 00191 Rome<br>Phone: 0039 63333309<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Rome |
| Cat A | <b>New Car Carrozzeria</b>                                                                                             |
|       | New Car srl, 35027 Noventa Padovana (PD), Via Noventa<br>Phone: 00394 989 59103<br>Associated Dealership: Padova       |

Japan

|       |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat A | <b>Ace Auto Service Co. Ltd.</b><br><br>Showajima Centre, 5-18 Showajima 1 Chome, Ohta-Ku, Tokyo 143-0004<br>Phone: 0081 3 5493 2345<br>Associated Dealership: Atlantic Cars Limited     |
| Cat A | <b>B-Right co, Ltd.</b><br><br>4-23 Meiboku-cho, Torikai, Settsu-City, Osaka 566-0063<br>Phone: 0081 72 653 5341<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Akasaka                          |
| Cat B | <b>Hakko Jidosha Co. Ltd.</b><br><br>4-8-35, Takaitanaka, Higashi-Osaka-Shi, Osaka Hakko Jidosha Co., Ltd.<br>Phone: 0081 6-6783-3401<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Osaka Hakko |
| Cat B | <b>IM Corporation Ltd.</b><br><br>1-27-31 Kitamikata, Takatsu-ku, Kawasaki-shi, Kanagawa<br>Phone: 0081 44833 1288<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Akasaka                        |

|       |                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat B | <b>Run and Run</b><br><br>2-226, Takasu, Sango-Shi, Saitama<br>Phone: 0081 48-955-8381<br>Associated Dealership: Atlantic Cars Limited                      |
| Cat B | <b>Showa Jidosha Co</b><br><br>303 -1, Irukadeshinden, Komaki-shi, Aichi, 485-0084<br>Phone: 0081 568 72 3718<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Nagoya |

Kuwait

|       |                                                                                        |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat A | <b>Aston Martin Kuwait</b><br><br>Phone:<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Kuwait |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

| Lebanon |                                                                                                                                                   | Monaco |                                                                                                     | Netherlands |                                                                                                            |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat B   | Chawa Fares                                                                                                                                       | Cat A  | Carrosserie Jourdan                                                                                 | Cat A       | Autoschade Groeneveld B.V                                                                                  |
|         | Honda Building, Chouran Unesco, PO Box 11-5800, Riad El Soih<br>11072000, Beruit<br>Phone: 00961 180001<br>Associated Dealership: MANA Automotive |        | 100 Val du Carei, 06500 Menton<br>Phone: 0033 493 35 94 00<br>Associated Dealership: British Motors |             | ESP 200, 5633 AC Eindhoven<br>Phone: 0031 402424546<br>Associated Dealership: Cito Motors                  |
|         |                                                                                                                                                   |        |                                                                                                     | Cat A       | Boschman Autoschade                                                                                        |
|         |                                                                                                                                                   |        |                                                                                                     |             | Reggestraat 29, 5347 JG Oss<br>Phone: 0031 412 650649<br>Associated Dealership: Kroymans Aston Martin B.V. |

New Zealand

|       |                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat A | <b>Evans European</b><br><br>353 Church Street, Penrose, Auckland<br>Phone: 0064 9 636 5004<br>Associated Dealership: Independent Prestige Limited      |
| Cat B | <b>Precision AutoWerk</b><br><br>224 Archers Road, Glenfield, Auckland<br>Phone: 0064 9 443 2432<br>Associated Dealership: Independent Prestige Limited |

Northern Ireland

|       |                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat A | <b>Charles Hurst ARC</b><br><br>The Cutts, Derriaghy Ind Est, Donmurray, Northern Ireland BT17 9HN<br>Phone: 02890 615856<br>Associated Dealership: Charles Hurst |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Norway

|       |                                                                                                                               |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat B | <b>Ullern Bil Skade AS</b><br><br>STALFJAERA 12, N - 0975 Olso<br>Phone: (+47) 24173050<br>Associated Dealership: AS INSIGNIA |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

| Portugal |                                                                                                                         | Russia |                                                                                | Saudi Arabia |                                                                                  |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat A    | AML Sport SA                                                                                                            | Cat B  | SportCar-Center                                                                | Cat A        | Haji Husein Alireza                                                              |
|          | Av. 25 de Abril, Lt. 120, Massamá, 2745-864 Queluz<br>Phone: 00351 21 430 97 00<br>Associated Dealership: AML Sport SA  |        | Abramtsevsкая 30, 127572, Moscow<br>Phone:<br>Associated Dealership: AM Moscow |              | Al Khobar<br>Phone: 966 3 8588 800<br>Associated Dealership: Haji Husein Alireza |
| Cat B    | Castro E Cruz                                                                                                           |        |                                                                                |              |                                                                                  |
|          | Rua Avelino Sagado De Oliveira, 13-A 2680-104 Camarate<br>Phone: 0035 1219474734<br>Associated Dealership: AML Sport SA |        |                                                                                |              |                                                                                  |

## Singapore

| Cat A | Tabernacle Auto Services PTE Ltd.                                                                         |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | 41 Kian Teck Drive, Singapore, 628855<br>Phone: (65) 6268 6571<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin SEA |

## South Africa

| Cat A | Renew-It Autobody                                                                                                                               |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | 19 Old Main Pretoria Road, Marlboro, Sandton, PO Box 784907, Sandton 2146<br>Phone: 011 444 6390<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Sandton |

## Spain

| Cat A | C De Salamanca SA Madrid                                                                                                                                 |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | C/ Zurbano, 93-95, Madrid 28003<br>Phone: 0034 915 548293<br>Associated Dealership: C De Salamanca SA Marbella                                           |
| Cat B | C De Salamanca SA Marbella                                                                                                                               |
|       | Marbella Carretera de Cádiz KM 171, 29670 San Pedro de Alcántara, Marbella<br>Phone: 0034 669 44 77 01<br>Associated Dealership: C De Salamanca SA       |
| Cat A | Central Reparacion Carrocerias                                                                                                                           |
|       | Quadis Autocentre Maresme, Ctra. Nacional II, Km. 643, 08349 Cabrera de Mar<br>Phone: 0034 93 741 80 15<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Barcelona |

Switzerland

| Cat A | Carroserie M Bellido                                                                                           |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | 42A Route de Satigny,1217 Meyrin, Geneva<br>Phone: 0041 227823290<br>Associated Dealership: Garage P Keller SA |
| Cat A | Emil Frey AG                                                                                                   |
|       | Industrie Nord, Autocentre, 5745 Safenwil<br>Phone: 0041 62 788 8888<br>Associated Dealership: Emil Frey AG    |
| Cat A | Garage Tarcisio Pasta SA                                                                                       |
|       | Via San Gottardo 47, 6828 BALERNA<br>Phone: 0041 31 6358500<br>Associated Dealership: Garage Tarcisio Pasta SA |

USA

| Cat A | Amato's Autobody Inc.                                                                                                            |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | 3848 Sorrento Valley Blvd, San Diego, CA 92121<br>Phone: 001 858 455 6715<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin of San Diego    |
| Cat A | Aston Martin of Troy                                                                                                             |
|       | 85 Linden Street, Waltham, MA 02452<br>Phone: 001 248-614-3181<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin of Troy                    |
| Cat A | Aston Martin Tysons                                                                                                              |
|       | 8545 Leesburg Pike, Vienna VA 22182<br>Phone: 001-703-790-3220<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Tysons                     |
| Cat B | Avio Coach Craft                                                                                                                 |
|       | 2245 Pontius Avenue, W. Los Angeles, CA 90064<br>Phone: 001 31 0312 1128<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin of Beverly Hills |

| Cat B | Barsotti's                                                                                                                 |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|       | 75 Mill Street, San Rafael, CA 94901<br>Phone: 001 415 454-5157<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Marin               |
| Cat A | Bell Red Auto Rebuild                                                                                                      |
|       | 1406 130th Avenue NE, Bellevue, Washington 98005<br>Phone: 001 425-453-5552<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Seattle |
| Cat A | Brook's Motorcars                                                                                                          |
|       | 9829 Bigge Street, Oakland, CA, 94603<br>Phone: 001 (510) 632-8901<br>Associated Dealership: Cole European                 |
| Cat A | Countach - Auto Ref. & Coach Work                                                                                          |
|       | 111 San Lorenzo, Coral Gables, FL 33146, Florida<br>Phone: 001 305 443 1468<br>Associated Dealership: The Collection       |



|              |                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>Dayas Custom Autos Inc.</b>                                                                                                    |
|              | 800 Bennet Drive, Longwood, Florida 32750<br>Phone: 001 407 3315599<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Orlando                |
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>DC Autocraft</b>                                                                                                               |
|              | 25/57 East Providencia Avenue, Burbank, California, 91502<br>Phone: 001 818846 5032<br>Associated Dealership: Galpin Aston Martin |
| <b>Cat B</b> | <b>Dell Auto Body</b>                                                                                                             |
|              | 950 Camden Avenue, Campbell, CA 95008<br>Phone: 001 408 370 0189<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Silicon Valley            |
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>European Motor Car Works</b>                                                                                                   |
|              | 2923 Tech Center Drive, Santa Ana, California 92705<br>Phone: 001 714 957 1290<br>Associated Dealership: Bauer Aston Martin       |

|              |                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>Exoticar Paintworks Inc.</b>                                                                                                             |
|              | 2901 S Highland, Building 9E, Las Vegas, Nevada 89109<br>Phone: 001 702 733 1859<br>Associated Dealership: Gaudin Aston Martin of Las Vegas |
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>First Class</b>                                                                                                                          |
|              | 2412 NE 5th Avenue, Pompano Beach, FL 33064<br>Phone: 001 954 785 3784<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Palm Beach                    |
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>Flower Hill Auto Body Inc.</b>                                                                                                           |
|              | 12 Middle Neck Road, Roslyn, NY 11576<br>Phone: 001 516 627 3913<br>Associated Dealership: Miller Motor Cars - Long Island                  |
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>Global Collision</b>                                                                                                                     |
|              | 5101 East Evans Avenue, Denver, Colorado 80222<br>Phone: 001 303 762 7562<br>Associated Dealership: Sill-Terhar Aston Martin                |

|              |                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>Harry's Auto Collision Center</b>                                                                                                        |
|              | 1013 South La Brea Avenue, Los Angeles, California 90019<br>Phone: 001 323 933 4600<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin of Beverly Hills |
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>Hollis Auto Body Inc.</b>                                                                                                                |
|              | 230 Eliot Street, Ashland, MA 01721<br>Phone: 001 508 881 1990<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin New England                           |
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>Inter-Pro Autobody Inc.</b>                                                                                                              |
|              | 417 W Washington Av, Lake Bluff IL 60044<br>Phone: 001 847-295-1222<br>Associated Dealership: Lake Forest                                   |
| <b>Cat A</b> | <b>J &amp; B Bodywerks</b>                                                                                                                  |
|              | 36 - 38 Beach St., Mt Vernon, NY 10550<br>Phone: 001 914 664 8080<br>Associated Dealership: Miller Motor Cars                               |

|       |                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat A | <b>Jacks Body Works Inc.</b><br><br>68350 Commercial Road, Cathedral City, CA 92234<br>Phone: 001 760 321 4752<br>Associated Dealership: Desert European Motor Cars Ltd. |
| Cat A | <b>John Eagle Collision Centre</b><br><br>6125 Peeler Street, Dallas, Texas, USA<br>Phone: 001 214 353 3570<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin Dallas                |
| Cat A | <b>Katy Coach Works Inc.</b><br><br>1180 Blalock Road, Houston, Texas 77055<br>Phone: 001 713 465 6225<br>Associated Dealership: Star Motor Cars                         |
| Cat A | <b>Magnum Collision Repair Centre</b><br><br>1445 Field Park Cir., Marietta, Georgia 30066<br>Phone: 001 770 427-4590<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin of Atlanta  |

|       |                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat A | <b>Quality Autobody</b><br><br>811 New Bruswick Avenue, Rahway, New Jersey 07065<br>Phone: 001 732 388 2400<br>Associated Dealership: F C Kerbeck Aston Martin |
| Cat B | <b>R&amp;S Auto Body Inc.</b><br><br>4102 N Armenia Avenue Tampa, Florida 33607<br>Phone: 001 813-876-1913<br>Associated Dealership: Aston Martin of Tampa Bay |
| Cat B | <b>Scottsdale Paint and Body</b><br><br>350 N. Hayden Road, Scottsdale, AZ 85257<br>Phone: 001 480 421 8800<br>Associated Dealership: Scottsdale Aston Martin  |
| Cat B | <b>True Performance</b><br><br>7854 Industrial Parkway, Plain City, Ohio 43064<br>Phone: 001 614 733 0708<br>Associated Dealership: Midwestern Auto Group      |

Scotland

|       |                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cat A | <b>JM Accident Repair Centre</b><br><br>Frairton Bridge Park, Frairton Road, Perth, Scotland, PH2 8DD<br>Phone: 01738 626262<br>Associated Dealership: Murray Aston Martin |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

# Dealer Directory

|                     |     |                   |      |                               |      |
|---------------------|-----|-------------------|------|-------------------------------|------|
| Introduction .....  | E.2 | France.....       | E.7  | Qatar .....                   | E.16 |
| Australia .....     | E.2 | Germany.....      | E.8  | Russia .....                  | E.16 |
| Austria.....        | E.3 | Greece.....       | E.10 | Saudi Arabia .....            | E.17 |
| Bahrain .....       | E.4 | Hong Kong.....    | E.10 | Singapore.....                | E.17 |
| Belgium.....        | E.4 | India .....       | E.11 | South Africa .....            | E.18 |
| Brazil.....         | E.4 | Italy.....        | E.11 | Spain .....                   | E.18 |
| Canada .....        | E.5 | Japan .....       | E.12 | Sweden.....                   | E.19 |
| Chile .....         | E.5 | Monaco .....      | E.12 | Switzerland.....              | E.19 |
| China .....         | E.6 | Netherlands ..... | E.13 | Taiwan.....                   | E.20 |
| Croatia .....       | E.6 | Norway.....       | E.13 | Turkey .....                  | E.20 |
| Czech Republic..... | E.6 | New Zealand ..... | E.14 | Ukraine.....                  | E.21 |
| Denmark.....        | E.7 | Middle East ..... | E.14 | United Kingdom .....          | E.21 |
|                     |     | Poland .....      | E.15 | United States of America..... | E.25 |
|                     |     | Portugal .....    | E.16 |                               |      |

## Introduction

This section lists all Aston Martin Dealers worldwide, where sales and service are provided by companies with the facilities, knowledge and factory trained personnel.

Every effort has been made to make sure that the information provided in the Dealer Directory is accurate and up-to-date. However changes amongst holders of the Aston Martin franchise may occur. Neither Aston Martin nor any listed Importer or Dealer shall in any circumstances be held liable for any inaccuracy, or the consequences thereof.

Dealers listed here all aim to conform to Aston Martin standards of excellence in both sales and service. However, all vehicles sold as Aston Martins are required to meet local legislation requirements. Should service be required in a country other than that in which this vehicle was originally purchased, every effort will be made to meet the owner's requirements, but the availability of certain parts may be affected by differences in vehicle and component specifications.

If the nearest Aston Martin Dealer is unable to help, contact Aston Martin directly:

**Aston Martin Lagonda Limited**  
 Banbury Road, Gaydon, WARWICK, CV35 0DB  
 Telephone: (+44) (0)1926 644300  
 Facsimile: (+44) (0)1926 644733  
 Web Site: [www.astonmartin.com](http://www.astonmartin.com)  
 E-Mail: [enquiries@astonmartin.com](mailto:enquiries@astonmartin.com)

Aston Martin Dealers are independent traders, they are not the Company's Agents, and therefore have no authority to bind the Company or to enter into any financial or other commitments on the Company's behalf.

Only Aston Martin Dealers are authorised to carry out warranty work.

## Australia

### Adelaide

#### Solitaire Aston Martin

32 Belair Rd., Hawthorn, Adelaide, SA 5062  
 Telephone: (+61) 8 8152 5100  
 Facsimile: (+61) 8 8152 5120  
 Web Site: [www.solitaire.com.au](http://www.solitaire.com.au)  
 E-Mail:

### Perth

#### Barbagallo Aston Martin

354 Scarborough Beach Rd., Osborne Park, Perth, WA 6017  
 Telephone: (+61) 8 9231 5999  
 Facsimile: (+61) 8 9242 3717  
 Web Site: [www.bargallo.com.au](http://www.bargallo.com.au)  
 E-Mail: [astonmartin@barbagallo.com.au](mailto:astonmartin@barbagallo.com.au)

## Austria

### Queensland

#### Sunshine Aston Martin

179 Nerang Rd., Southport, Queensland, 4215

Telephone: (+61) 7 5582 7888

Facsimile: (+61) 7 5532 3361

Web Site: [www.sunshineastonmartin.com.au](http://www.sunshineastonmartin.com.au)

E-Mail: [sales@sunshineastonmartin.com.au](mailto:sales@sunshineastonmartin.com.au)

### Sydney

#### Aston Martin Sydney

32–38 Yurong St., East Sydney, NSW 2010

Telephone: (+61) 2 8338 3993

Facsimile: (+61) 2 8338 2169

Web Site: [www.astonmartinsydney.com.au](http://www.astonmartinsydney.com.au)

E-Mail: [astonmartin@trivett.com.au](mailto:astonmartin@trivett.com.au)

### Victoria

#### Aston Martin Melbourne

80 City Road, Southbank, Victoria 3006

Telephone: (+61) 3 8866 3111

Facsimile: (+61) 3 8866 3100

Web Site: [www.astonmartinmelbourne.com.au](http://www.astonmartinmelbourne.com.au)

E-Mail: [astonmartinmelbourne@trivett.com.au](mailto:astonmartinmelbourne@trivett.com.au)

### Salzburg

#### Aston Martin Salzburg

Wasserfeldstraße 17a, 5020 Salzburg

Telephone: (+43) 662 887 8820

Facsimile: (+43) 662 887 882 88

Web Site: [www.astonmartin.at](http://www.astonmartin.at)

E-Mail: [salzburg@astonmartin.at](mailto:salzburg@astonmartin.at)

### Vienna

#### Aston Martin Wien

Motorcity SCS, Autoallee 7, 2334 Vosendorf b. Wien

Telephone: (+43) 1 698 1200 0

Facsimile: (+43) 1 698 1200 88

Web Site: [www.astonmartin.at](http://www.astonmartin.at)

E-Mail: [wien@astonmartin.at](mailto:wien@astonmartin.at)

## Bahrain

### Bahrain

**Montana Motors**  
 PO Box 28070, Riffa  
 Telephone: (+973) 1 766 9999  
 Facsimile: (+973) 1 766 8888  
 Web Site: www.montanamotors.com  
 E-Mail: montana@batelco.com.bh

## Belgium

### Antwerp

**Aston Martin Antwerp**  
 Autolei 322, 2160 Wommelgem  
 Telephone: (+32) (0) 3 354 3856  
 Facsimile: (+32) (0) 3 354 5867  
 Web Site: www.astonmartin-antwerp.com  
 E-Mail: info@astonmartin-antwerp.com

### Brussels

**Aston Martin Brussels NV-SA**  
 Borrestraat 23, St. Stevens-Woluwe, 1932  
 Telephone: (+32) (0) 2720 4345  
 Facsimile: (+32) (0) 2720 8474  
 Web Site: www.astonmartin-brussels.com  
 E-Mail: info@astonmartin-brussels.com

## Brazil

### Sao Paulo

**Aston Martin Sao Paulo**  
 Rua Colombia 799  
 Telephone:  
 Facsimile:  
 Web Site:  
 E-Mail: ifonseca@gbcars.com.br

## Canada

### Alberta

#### Aston Martin Calgary

150 Glendeer Circle SE, Calgary, Alberta, T2H 2V4

Telephone: (+1) 403 648 4755

Facsimile: (+1) 403 648 0056

Web Site: [www.astonmartincalgary.ca](http://www.astonmartincalgary.ca)

E-Mail:

### British Columbia

#### MCL Motor Cars (1992) Inc.

1820 Burrard St., Vancouver, British Columbia, V6J 3H1

Telephone: (+1) 604 733 1820

Facsimile: (+1) 604 733 1828

Web Site: [www.astonmartinvancouver.com](http://www.astonmartinvancouver.com)

E-Mail: [sales@mclmotorcars.com](mailto:sales@mclmotorcars.com)

### Ontario

#### Aston Martin of Ontario

740 Dupont St., Toronto, Ontario, M6G 1Z6

Telephone: (+1) 416 530 1880

Facsimile: (+1) 416 530 4495

Web Site: [www.astonmartinofontario.com](http://www.astonmartinofontario.com)

E-Mail: [sales@grandtouringautos.com](mailto:sales@grandtouringautos.com)

### Quebec

#### Decarie Motors

8255 Bougainville, Montreal, Quebec, H4P 2T3

Telephone: (+1) 514 334 9910

Facsimile: (+1) 514 336 0548

Web Site: [www.decarie.com](http://www.decarie.com)

E-Mail: [sales@decarie.com](mailto:sales@decarie.com)

## Chile

### Santiago

#### Aston Martin Santiago

Padre Hurtado Norte No. 1602, Vitacura, Santiago 7650191

Telephone:

Facsimile:

Web Site:

E-Mail:

# China

## Beijing

**Aston Martin Beijing**  
 No.8 Jinbao Street, Dongcheng District, 100018  
 Telephone: (+86) 10 6528 0007  
 Facsimile: (+86) 10 6528 0087  
 Web Site: www.astonmartin-china.com  
 E-Mail:

## Chengdu

**Aston Martin Chengdu**

Telephone:  
 Facsimile:  
 Web Site:  
 E-Mail:

# Croatia

## Zagreb

**Aston Martin Zagreb**  
 Radnička 37b, Zagreb  
 Telephone: (+385) 1 6410 500  
 Facsimile: (+385) 1 6410 501  
 Web Site: www.astommartinzagreb.hr  
 E-Mail: info@astonmartinzagreb.hr

# Czech Republic

## Prague

**Aston Martin Prague**  
 Ěeskomoravská 183, Prague  
 Telephone: (+420) 272 040 007  
 Facsimile: (+420) 284 680 115  
 Web Site: www.astonmartinpraha.cz  
 E-Mail: TBA



## Denmark

### Copenhagen

#### Aston Martin Denmark

Bryggervangen 39, PO 2630, DK-2100, Copenhagen Ø

Telephone: (+45) 369 00 945

Facsimile: (+45) 392 72 250

Web Site: [www.aston-martin.dk](http://www.aston-martin.dk)

E-Mail: [hsw@astonmartin.dk](mailto:hsw@astonmartin.dk)

## France

### Bordeaux

#### Auto Performance Bordeaux

114 Avenue JF Kennedy, 33700 Mérignac

Telephone: (+33) 5 56 16 21 00

Facsimile: (+33) 5 56 16 21 01

Web Site: [www.astonmartinbordeaux.com](http://www.astonmartinbordeaux.com)

E-Mail: [contact@astonmartinbordeaux.com](mailto:contact@astonmartinbordeaux.com)

### Cannes

#### Royal Motors Cannes

1390 Ave. du Campon, 06110 Cannes

Telephone: (+33) 4 93 94 84 84

Facsimile: (+33) 4 92 18 16 01

Web Site: [www.aston-martin-cannes.com](http://www.aston-martin-cannes.com)

E-Mail: [commercial@royal-motor.com](mailto:commercial@royal-motor.com)

### Lyon

#### Auto Performance Lyon

5, Avenue du Maréchal Foch, 69006 LYON

Telephone: (+33) (0) 4 37 48 07 07

Facsimile: (+33) (0) 4 37 48 07 08

Web Site: [www.astonmartinlyon.com](http://www.astonmartinlyon.com)

E-Mail: [contact@astonmartinlyon.com](mailto:contact@astonmartinlyon.com)

### Paris

#### Auto Performance Paris

25 Ave. Franklin D Roosevelt, 75008 Paris

Telephone: (+33) 1 40 75 20 85

Facsimile: (+33) 1 40 75 20 86

Web Site: [www.astonmartinparis.com](http://www.astonmartinparis.com)

E-Mail: [contact@astonmartinparis.com](mailto:contact@astonmartinparis.com)

# Germany

## Aachen

**Hauswirth Exclusive Cars GMBH**  
 Europaplatz 17-19, 52068 Aachen  
 Telephone: (+49) 241 16604 22  
 Facsimile: (+49) 241 16604 41  
 Web Site: www.astonmartin-aachen.de  
 E-Mail: info@astonmartin-aachen.de

## Memmingen

**Aston Martin Allgäu**  
 Teramostraße 40, 87700  
 Telephone: (+49) 8331 974450  
 Facsimile: (+49) 8331 97445 - 15  
 Web Site: www.astonmartin-allgaeu.de  
 E-Mail: info@astonmartin-allgaeu.de

## Berlin

**Krauthahn Berlin**  
 Nestorstraße 27–29, 10709 Berlin  
 Telephone: (+49) 30 89 60 000  
 Facsimile: (+49) 30 89 31 667  
 Web Site: www.krauthahn-berlin.de  
 E-Mail: service@krauthahn-berlin.de

## Bremen

**Tamsen GMBH**  
 Hauptstraße 55 (B 51), 28816 Stuhr, Bremen  
 Telephone: (+49) 421 80 95 80  
 Facsimile: (+49) 421 80 95 840  
 Web Site: www.tamsen.de  
 E-Mail: info@tamsen.de

## Cologne

**Royal Motors Kempen GMBH**  
 Raderthalgürtel 2, 50968 Cologne  
 Telephone: (+49) 2 21 9347 800  
 Facsimile: (+49) 2 21 380 488  
 Web Site: www.astonmartin-koeln.de  
 E-Mail: info@astonmartin.koeln.de

## Dortmund

**Aston Martin Dortmund**  
 Hannoversche Straße 44, 44143 Dortmund  
 Telephone: (+49) 231 91 20 4067  
 Facsimile: (+49) 231 91 20 4049  
 Web Site: www.premiumcars-peters.de  
 E-Mail:

**Dresden****Thomas Exclusive Cars GMBH**

Meissner Straße 34, 01445 Radebeul

Telephone: (+49) 351 404 6420

Facsimile: (+49) 351 404 6410

Web Site: [www.astonmartin-dresden.de](http://www.astonmartin-dresden.de)E-Mail: [info@astonmartin-dresden.de](mailto:info@astonmartin-dresden.de)**Düsseldorf****Aston Martin Düsseldorf**

Willstatterstr. 45, 40549 Düsseldorf

Telephone: (+49) 211 9446 01

Facsimile: (+49) 211 9446 1730

Web Site: [www.astonmartin-duesseldorf.de](http://www.astonmartin-duesseldorf.de)E-Mail: [info@astonmartin-duesseldorf.de](mailto:info@astonmartin-duesseldorf.de)**Frankfurt****Aston Martin Kronberg**

Frankfurter Straße, 61476 Kronberg T/S, Frankfurt

Telephone: (+49) 6173 999680

Facsimile: (+49) 6173 64873

Web Site: [www.astonmartin-kronberg.de](http://www.astonmartin-kronberg.de)

E-Mail:

**Hamburg****Tamsen GMBH**

Merkurring 2, 22143 Hamburg

Telephone: (+49) 405 700 3000

Facsimile: (+49) 405 700 3040

Web Site: [www.tamsen.de](http://www.tamsen.de)E-Mail: [info@tamsen.de](mailto:info@tamsen.de)**Hannover****Aston Martin Hannover**

Podbielskistrasse 322, 30655 Hannover

Telephone: (+49) 511 897 8890

Facsimile: (+49) 511 358 55-66

Web Site: [www.kamps-hannover.de](http://www.kamps-hannover.de)E-Mail: [kamps-hannover@kamps-gruppe.de](mailto:kamps-hannover@kamps-gruppe.de)**München****Aston Martin München**

Moosacher Str. 40, 80809, München

Telephone: (+49) 89 287 0120

Facsimile: (+49) 89 287 012 22

Web Site: [www.astonmartin-muenchen.de](http://www.astonmartin-muenchen.de)

E-Mail:

# Greece

## Stuttgart

### Aston Martin Stuttgart

Cannstatter Straße 46, 70190 Stuttgart  
 Telephone: (+49) 711 2803 3646  
 Facsimile: (+49) 711 2803 3615  
 Web Site: [www.astonmartin-stuttgart.de](http://www.astonmartin-stuttgart.de)  
 E-Mail:

## Athens

### Aston Martin Athens

195 Athinion Avenue, Egaleo, 12242  
 Telephone: +30 210 5318200  
 Facsimile: +30 210 5318210  
 Web Site:  
 E-Mail:

# Hong Kong

### MF Jebsen Automotive Ltd.

63 Blue Pool Road, Happy Valley, Hong Kong  
 Telephone: (+852) 2366 2017  
 Facsimile: (+852) 2191 9117  
 Web Site: [www.mfjebsen.com](http://www.mfjebsen.com)  
 E-Mail: [automotive@mfjebsen.com](mailto:automotive@mfjebsen.com)

## India

### Aston Martin Mumbai

Telephone:

Facsimile:

Web Site:

E-Mail:

## Italy

### Florence

#### Aston Martin Florence

Via Di Limite 148, Campi Bisenzio, 50013

Telephone: (+39) 0558970898

Facsimile:

Web Site: [www.astonmartinbologna.it](http://www.astonmartinbologna.it)

E-Mail: [info@astonmartinfirenze.it](mailto:info@astonmartinfirenze.it)

### Milan

#### Aston Martin Milan

Via Monte Rosa, 91, 20149 Milano

Telephone: (+39) 02 43510988

Facsimile: (+39) 02 43511598

Web Site: [www.astonmartinmilano.it](http://www.astonmartinmilano.it)

E-Mail: [info@astonmartinmilano.it](mailto:info@astonmartinmilano.it)

### Rome

#### Aston Martin Roma

Via F. Siacchi 44, 00197 Rome

Telephone: (+39) 06808 2487

Facsimile: (+39) 06808 2415

Web Site: [www.astonmartinroma.it](http://www.astonmartinroma.it)

E-Mail: [info@astonmartinroma.it](mailto:info@astonmartinroma.it)

# Japan

## Nagoya

**Aston Martin Nagoya Hakko**  
 2-44-20 Shinsakae, Naka-ku, Nagoya 460-0007  
 Telephone: (+81) (0)52 242 0888  
 Facsimile: (+81) (0)52 242 0878  
 Web Site: [www.astonmartin-nagoya.com](http://www.astonmartin-nagoya.com)  
 E-Mail: [astonmartin-nagoyaa@hakko-group.co.jp](mailto:astonmartin-nagoyaa@hakko-group.co.jp)

## Osaka

**Aston Martin Osaka Hakko**  
 1-19-1 Kitahorie, Nishi-ku, Osaka 550-0014  
 Telephone: (+81) (0)6 6531 0078  
 Facsimile: (+81) (0)6 6531 0118  
 Web Site: [www.astonmartin-osaka.co.jp](http://www.astonmartin-osaka.co.jp)  
 E-Mail: [astonmartin-osaka@hakko-group.co.jp](mailto:astonmartin-osaka@hakko-group.co.jp)

## Tokyo

**Aston Martin Akasaka**  
 Akasaka Showroom, 4-9-25 Akasaka, Minato-ku, Tokyo 107-0052  
 Telephone: (+81) (0)3 5411 2332  
 Facsimile: (+81) (0)3 3479 0774  
 Web Site: [www.astonmartin-akasaka.com](http://www.astonmartin-akasaka.com)  
 E-Mail: [info@astonmartin-akasaka.com](mailto:info@astonmartin-akasaka.com)

## Atlantic Cars Limited

2-3-3 Azabudai, Minato-ku, Tokyo 106-0041  
 Telephone: (+81) (0)3 3583 8611  
 Facsimile: (+81) (0)3 3583 8613  
 Web Site: [www.astonmartin.co.jp](http://www.astonmartin.co.jp)  
 E-Mail: [atlantic\\_cars@astonmartin.co.jp](mailto:atlantic_cars@astonmartin.co.jp)

# Monaco

## Monte Carlo

**British Motors SAM**  
 15 Blvd. Princesse Charlotte, 98000 Monte Carlo  
 Telephone: (+377) 97 978 978  
 Facsimile: (+377) 97 978 989  
 Web Site: [www.aston-martin-monaco.com](http://www.aston-martin-monaco.com)  
 E-Mail: [british-motors@british-motors.mc](mailto:british-motors@british-motors.mc)

## Netherlands

### Almere

#### Noble House B.V

Zandzuigerstraat 154, 1333 MZ

Telephone: (+31) 36 53 25 300

Facsimile: (+31) 36 53 24 852

Web Site: [www.noblehouseclassics.nl](http://www.noblehouseclassics.nl)

E-Mail: [noble.house@dutch.nl](mailto:noble.house@dutch.nl)

### Eindhoven

#### Cito Motors B.V.

Huizingalaan 66, 5628 CM Eindhoven

Telephone: (+31) 40 29 01 110

Facsimile: (+31) 40 24 14 956

Web Site: [www.citomotors.nl](http://www.citomotors.nl)

E-Mail: [info@astonmartineindhoven.nl](mailto:info@astonmartineindhoven.nl)

### Hilversum

#### Kroymans Aston Martin B.V.

Soestdijkerstraatweg 66, 1213 XE Hilversum

Telephone: (+31) 35 646 2230

Facsimile: (+31) 35 683 5646

Web Site: [www.astonmartin.nl](http://www.astonmartin.nl)

E-Mail: [info@astonmartin.nl](mailto:info@astonmartin.nl)

## Norway

### Oslo

#### As Insignia

Sofienberggaten 35, N-0558 Oslo

Telephone: (+47) 2323 3377

Facsimile: (+47) 2323 3301

Web Site: [www.insignia.no](http://www.insignia.no)

E-Mail:

# New Zealand

## Auckland

**Independent Prestige Limited**  
 150 Great North Rd., Grey Lynn, Auckland  
 Telephone: (+64) (0) 9 360 3202  
 Facsimile: (+64) (0) 9 361 6403  
 Web Site: [www.astonmartin.co.nz](http://www.astonmartin.co.nz)  
 E-Mail: [sales@iprestige.co.nz](mailto:sales@iprestige.co.nz)

# Middle East

## Al-Khobar

**Haji Hussein Alireza**  
 King Faisal Rd., PO Box 269, Al-Khobar  
 Telephone: (+966) 3 887 8087  
 Facsimile: (+966) 3 887 9690  
 Web Site: [www.hha.com.sa](http://www.hha.com.sa)  
 E-Mail: [contact@hha.com.sa](mailto:contact@hha.com.sa)

## Bahrain

**Montana Motors**  
 PO Box 28070, Riffa  
 Telephone: (+973) 1 766 9999  
 Facsimile: (+973) 1 766 8888  
 Web Site: [www.montanamotors.com](http://www.montanamotors.com)  
 E-Mail: [montana@batelco.com.bh](mailto:montana@batelco.com.bh)

## Beirut

**Mana Automotive S.A.L.**  
 Aston Martin & Land Rover Building, Chouran, Unesco, Verdun,  
 PO Box 11–5800, Beirut  
 Telephone: (+961) 1 771000  
 Facsimile: (+961) 1 785205  
 Web Site:  
 E-Mail: [astonmartin@tewtelgroup.com](mailto:astonmartin@tewtelgroup.com)

## Doha

**Horizon Automobiles**  
 PO Box 37554  
 Telephone: (+974) 594 4111  
 Facsimile: (+974) 458 2444  
 Web Site:  
 E-Mail:



## Poland

### Dubai

#### Al Habtoor Motors Co. (LLC)

Al Ittihad Rd, Dubai

Telephone: (+971) 4 295 6232

Facsimile: (+971) 4 294 4422

Web Site:

E-Mail:

### Jeddah

#### Haji Hussein Alireza

PO Box 40, Jeddah 21411

Telephone: (+966) 2 642 3509

Facsimile: (+966) 2 642 6435

Web Site: [www.hha.com.sa](http://www.hha.com.sa)

E-Mail: [contact@hha.com.sa](mailto:contact@hha.com.sa)

### Kuwait

#### Premier International Motors Group Co WLL

Alghazali Road, PO Box 5963, Safat

Telephone: (+965) 1824242

Facsimile: (+965) 22324811

Web Site:

E-Mail: [info@astonmartin-kuwait.com](mailto:info@astonmartin-kuwait.com)

### Riyadh

#### Haji Hussein Alireza

PO Box 87106

Telephone: (+966) 1 493 4444

Facsimile: (+966) 1 493 6443

Web Site: [www.hha.com.sa](http://www.hha.com.sa)

E-Mail: [contact@hha.com.sa](mailto:contact@hha.com.sa)

### Warszawa

#### Aston Martin Warszawa

03-910 Warszawa, Waszyngtona 50

Telephone: (+48) 22 591 79 40

Facsimile: (+48) 22 354 34 35

Web Site:

E-Mail: [kontakt@astonmartinwarszawa.pl](mailto:kontakt@astonmartinwarszawa.pl)

| Portugal                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Qatar                                                                                                                                  | Russia                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lisbon                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Doha                                                                                                                                   | Moscow                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>AML Sport Lisboa</b><br>Rua António Enes 21 A, 1050–023 Lisbon<br>Telephone:     (+351) 21 31 47 731<br>Facsimile:     (+351) 21 31 92 389<br>Web Site:<br>E-Mail:         lisboa@astonmartin.pt        | <b>Horizon Automobiles</b><br>PO Box 37554<br>Telephone:     (+974) 594 4111<br>Facsimile:     (+974) 458 2444<br>Web Site:<br>E-Mail: | <b>Aston Martin Moscow</b><br>1, Kutuzovsky prospect, Moscow 121248<br>Telephone:     (+7) 495 229 0007<br>Facsimile:     (+7) 495 258 1667<br>Web Site:       www.astonmartin.ru<br>E-Mail:         info@astonmartin.ru |
| Porto                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Aston Martin Portugal</b><br>Avenida da Boavista 4143, 4100 - 140, Porto<br>Telephone:     (+351) 226 172 035<br>Facsimile:     (+351) 226 158 659<br>Web Site:<br>E-Mail:         porto@astonmartin.pt |                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

## Saudi Arabia

### Al-Khobar

#### Haji Hussein Alireza

Dammam Highway, P.O. Box 269, Al-Khobar

Telephone: (+966) 3 887 8087

Facsimile: (+966) 3 887 9690

Web Site: [www.hha.com.sa](http://www.hha.com.sa)

E-Mail: [contact@hha.com.sa](mailto:contact@hha.com.sa)

### Jeddah

#### Haji Husein Alireza

P.O. Box 40, Jeddah

Telephone: (+966) 2 642 3509

Facsimile: (+966) 2 642 6435

Web Site: [www.hha.com.sa](http://www.hha.com.sa)

E-Mail: [contact@hha.com.sa](mailto:contact@hha.com.sa)

### Riyadh

#### Haji Husein Alireza

P.O. Box 87106, Riyadh

Telephone: (+966) 1 493 4444

Facsimile: (+966) 1 493 6443

Web Site: [www.hha.com.sa](http://www.hha.com.sa)

E-Mail: [contact@hha.com.sa](mailto:contact@hha.com.sa)

## Singapore

#### Aston Martin Lagonda (SEA) PTE Ltd.

Number 1, Tuas Basin Link, Singapore 638755

Telephone: (+65) 6862 5868

Facsimile: (+65) 6862 5388

Web Site: [www.astonmartin.com.sg](http://www.astonmartin.com.sg)

E-Mail: [enquiries@astonmartin.com.sg](mailto:enquiries@astonmartin.com.sg)

## South Africa

### Cape Town

#### Aston Martin Cape Town

The V & A Waterfront, Corner Dock Rd. and Breakwater Blvd., Cape Town 8002

Telephone: (+27) 21 425 2007

Facsimile: (+27)

Web Site:

E-Mail:

### Johannesburg

#### Aston Martin Sandton

Sandton Isle, Corner Rivonia and Linden Rd., Sandton 2196

Telephone: (+27) 11 301 7100

Facsimile: (+27) 11 301 7101

Web Site:

E-Mail: info@astonmartin.co.za

## Spain

### Barcelona

#### Aston Martin Barcelona

Roger de Llúria, 115, 08037 Barcelona

Telephone: (+34) 93 215 21 70

Facsimile: (+34) 93 215 21 74

Web Site: www.astonbcn.com

E-Mail: ventas.astonmartin@quadis.es

### Madrid

#### C. de Salamanca SA

Zurbano, 93–95, 28003 Madrid

Telephone: (+34) 91 554 8293

Facsimile: (+34) 91 553 5206

Web Site: www.cdesalamanca.com

E-Mail: ventas.zb@cdesalamanca.com

### Marbella

#### C. de Salamanca SA

Carretera de Cádiz, KM 171, San Pedro de Alcántara, 29670 Marbella

Telephone: (+34) 952 78 52 50

Facsimile: (+34) 952 78 03 66

Web Site: www.cdesalamanca.com

E-Mail: ventas1.spedro@cdesalamanca.com

### Valencia

#### Aston Martin Valencia

Calle General Aviles 36-38, 46015 Valencia

Telephone: (+34) 96 347 91 99

Facsimile: (+34) 96 347 92 25

Web Site: www.astonmartinvalencia.com

E-Mail: ventas.astonmartin@quadis.es

## Sweden

### Stockholm

Aston Martin Stockholm

Rinkebyvagen 9, S-182 36, Danderyd, Stockholm

Telephone: (+46) 8 755 15 15

Facsimile: (+46) 8 7558782

Web Site: [www.astonmartin-stockholm.com](http://www.astonmartin-stockholm.com)

E-Mail:

## Switzerland

### Geneva

#### Keller Motorcars Geneva

Rue du Grand Pré 2, 1202 Geneva

Telephone: (+41) 22 919 0500

Facsimile: (+41) 22 919 0509

Web Site: [www.kellermotorcars.ch](http://www.kellermotorcars.ch)

E-Mail: [geneve@kellermotorcars.ch](mailto:geneve@kellermotorcars.ch)

### Cadenazzo

#### Garage Tarcisio Pasta SA

Via Monteceneri 1, 6593 Cadenazzo

Telephone: (+41) 91 850 2024

Facsimile: (+41) 91 840 1856

Web Site: [www.tpasta.ch](http://www.tpasta.ch)

E-Mail: [astonmartin@tpasta.ch](mailto:astonmartin@tpasta.ch)

### Safenwil

#### Emil Frey AG

Autocenter Safenwil, Industrie Nord, 5745 Safenwil

Telephone: (+41) 62 788 8807

Facsimile: (+41) 62 788 84 33

Web Site: [www.astonmartin.ch](http://www.astonmartin.ch)

E-Mail: [astonmartin-safenwil@emilfrey.ch](mailto:astonmartin-safenwil@emilfrey.ch)

### Zurich

#### Aston Martin St. Gallen

Kolumbanstrasse 82, St. Gallen, Zurich

Telephone: +41 (0) 71 69 46 007

Facsimile: +41 (0) 71 69 46 008

Web Site: [www.astonmartin.ch](http://www.astonmartin.ch)

E-Mail: [contact@astonmartinstgallen.com](mailto:contact@astonmartinstgallen.com)

## Taiwan

### Zurich

#### Emil Frey AG

Badenerstrasse 600, 8048 Zurich

Telephone: (+41) (0) 44 495 2515

Facsimile: (+41) (0) 44 495 2305

Web Site: [www.astonmartin.ch](http://www.astonmartin.ch)

E-Mail: [astonmartin@emilfrey.ch](mailto:astonmartin@emilfrey.ch)

### Taipei

#### Aston Martin Taipei

No. 20, Section 1, Jhongcheng Road, Tienmu

Telephone: (+886) 2 2836 8899

Facsimile: (+886) 2 2835 8899

Web Site:

E-Mail:

## Turkey

### Istanbul

#### Aston Martin Istanbul

21 Firuzkoy Bulvari, Avcilar, 34320

Telephone: (+90) 212 412 0150

Facsimile:

Web Site:

E-Mail:

## Ukraine

### Kiev

#### Aston Martin Kiev

Lot 1, Business Centre Leonardo, Bohdana Khmel'nitskogo Street, Kiev, 1030

Telephone: (+380) (44) 494-2121

Facsimile: (+380) (44) 494-4499

Web Site:

E-Mail:

## United Kingdom

### Antrim

#### Charles Hurst Limited

62 Boucher Rd., Belfast, BT12 6LR

Telephone: (+44) (0) 28 9038 1721

Facsimile: (+44) (0) 28 9066 2355

Web Site: [www.charleshurstgroup.co.uk](http://www.charleshurstgroup.co.uk)

E-Mail:

### Berkshire

#### Lancaster Reading

Bennet Rd., Reading, Berkshire, RG2 0QX

Telephone: (+44) (0)118 9658500

Facsimile: (+44) (0)118 9658501

Web Site: [www.lancasterplc.com](http://www.lancasterplc.com)

E-Mail: [astonmartin@reading.jardinemotors.co.uk](mailto:astonmartin@reading.jardinemotors.co.uk)

### Buckinghamshire

#### Aston Martin Lagonda Limited

Works Service, Tickford St., Newport Pagnell, MK16 9AN

Telephone: (+44) (0)1908 619264

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1908 216439

Web Site: [www.astonmartin.com](http://www.astonmartin.com)

E-Mail: [service2@astonmartin.com](mailto:service2@astonmartin.com)

**Stratstone Aston Martin Amersham**

44 Woodside Rd., Amersham, Buckinghamshire, HP6 6AJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1494 788360

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1494 788379

Web Site: [www.stratstone.com](http://www.stratstone.com)

E-Mail: [amershamastonmartin@stratstone.com](mailto:amershamastonmartin@stratstone.com)

**Cambridgeshire**

**Lancaster Cambridge**

High St., Harston, Cambridge, CB22 7TN

Telephone: (+44) (0)870 410 3848

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1223 875675

Web Site: [www.lancasterplc.com](http://www.lancasterplc.com)

E-Mail: [astonmartin@cambridge.jardinemotors.co.uk](mailto:astonmartin@cambridge.jardinemotors.co.uk)

**Cheshire**

**Stratstone Aston Martin Wilmslow**

Water Lane, Wilmslow, SK9 5BQ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1625 548802

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1625 526873

Web Site: [www.stratstone.com](http://www.stratstone.com)

E-Mail: [wilmslowastonmartin@stratstone.com](mailto:wilmslowastonmartin@stratstone.com)

**Derbyshire**

**Stratstone Aston Martin Derby**

Sir Frank Whittle Rd., Derby, DE21 4LT

Telephone: (+44) (0)1332 258796

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1332 258799

Web Site: [www.stratstone.com](http://www.stratstone.com)

E-Mail: [derbyastonmartin@stratstone.com](mailto:derbyastonmartin@stratstone.com)

**Devon**

**Grange of Exeter**

Yeoford Way, Exeter, EX2 8LB

Telephone: (+44) (0)1392 678044

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1392 678048

Web Site: [www.grange.co.uk](http://www.grange.co.uk)

E-Mail: [grangeastonmartinexeter@grange.co.uk](mailto:grangeastonmartinexeter@grange.co.uk)

**Essex**

**Grange Aston Martin**

2 Brook St., Brentwood, CM14 5LU

Telephone: (+44) (0)1277 249555

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1277 249556

Web Site: [www.grange.co.uk](http://www.grange.co.uk)

E-Mail: [grangeastonmartin.brentwood@summitautogroup.co.uk](mailto:grangeastonmartin.brentwood@summitautogroup.co.uk)



**Gloucestershire****Broughtons Aston Martin**

Rutherford Way, Cheltenham, GL51 9SQ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1242 232667

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1242 232668

Web Site: [www.broughtons.co.uk](http://www.broughtons.co.uk)E-Mail: [info@broughtonsastonmartin.co.uk](mailto:info@broughtonsastonmartin.co.uk)**Hertfordshire****Grange of Welwyn**

Great North Rd., Stanborough, Welwyn Garden City AL8 7TQ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1707 280868

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1707 280869

Web Site: [www.grange.co.uk](http://www.grange.co.uk)

E-Mail:

**Jersey****Jacksons (CI) Ltd.**

La Rue Fondon, St. Peter, Jersey, JE3 7BF

Telephone: (+44) (0) 1534 497777

Facsimile: (+44) (0) 1534 497729

Web Site: [www.jacksonsci.com](http://www.jacksonsci.com)E-Mail: [astonmartin@jacksons.je](mailto:astonmartin@jacksons.je)**Kent****Lancaster Sevenoaks**

114 - 115 London Rd., Sevenoaks, TN13 2DN

Telephone: (+44) (0)844 668 0138

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1732 465566

Web Site: [www.lancasterastonmartin.co.uk](http://www.lancasterastonmartin.co.uk)E-Mail: [astonmartin@sevenoaks.jardinemotors.co.uk](mailto:astonmartin@sevenoaks.jardinemotors.co.uk)**London****Stratstone Aston Martin Mayfair**

Brook House, Park Lane, London, W1K 7AJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)20 7235 8888

Facsimile: (+44) (0)20 7629 5376

Web Site: [www.stratstone.com](http://www.stratstone.com)E-Mail: [mayfairastonmartin@stratstone.com](mailto:mayfairastonmartin@stratstone.com)**Lothian****Murray Motor Company**

6 Bankhead Drive, Sighthill, Edinburgh, EH11 4DJ

Telephone: (+44) (0) 131 442 2800

Facsimile: (+44) (0) 131 468 7219

Web Site: [www.murrayastonmartin.co.uk](http://www.murrayastonmartin.co.uk)E-Mail: [murraymotorco@jmgroup.co.uk](mailto:murraymotorco@jmgroup.co.uk)

## Norfolk

### Stratton Motor Company (Norfolk) Limited

Ipswich Rd., Long Stratton, Norwich, NR15 2XJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1508 530491

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1508 531670

Web Site: [www.strattonmotorcompany.com](http://www.strattonmotorcompany.com)

E-Mail: [astonsales@strattonmotorcompany.com](mailto:astonsales@strattonmotorcompany.com)

## South Glamorgan

### Stratstone Aston Martin Cardiff

Cambria House, 156 North Rd., Cardiff, CF14 3BH

Telephone: (+44) (0) 2920 695700

Facsimile: (+44) (0) 2920 695718

Web Site: [www.stratstone.com](http://www.stratstone.com)

E-Mail: [cardiffastonmartin@stratstone.com](mailto:cardiffastonmartin@stratstone.com)

## Surrey

### HWM Aston Martin

New Zealand Ave., Walton on Thames, KT12 1AT

Telephone: (+44) (0)1932 240611

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1932 225440

Web Site: [www.hwmastonmartin.co.uk](http://www.hwmastonmartin.co.uk)

E-Mail: [sales@hwm.co.uk](mailto:sales@hwm.co.uk)

## Tyne and Wear

### Stratstone Aston Martin Tyne and Wear

Stoneygate, Houghton le Spring, Tyne and Wear, DH4 4NJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)191 512 3512

Facsimile: (+44) (0)191 512 3509

Web Site: [www.stratstone.com](http://www.stratstone.com)

E-Mail:

## West Midlands

### Stratstone Aston Martin Hagley

94-96 Kidderminster Rd., Hagley, DY9 0QL

Telephone: (+44) (0) 1562 888 380

Facsimile: (+44) (0) 1562 888 382

Web Site: [www.stratstone.com](http://www.stratstone.com)

E-Mail: [birminghamastonmartin@stratstone.com](mailto:birminghamastonmartin@stratstone.com)

## West Sussex

### Harwoods Aston Martin

Terminus Rd., Chichester, PO19 8TX

Telephone: (+44) (0)1243 836500

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1243 836525

Web Site: [www.harwoods.uk.com/astonmartin](http://www.harwoods.uk.com/astonmartin)

E-Mail: [infoasm@harwoods.uk.com](mailto:infoasm@harwoods.uk.com)

## United States of America

### West Yorkshire

#### JCT 600 Aston Martin Brooklands

Ring Road, Lower Wortley, Leeds, LS12 6AA

Telephone: (+44) (0) 844 844 3101

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1133 890778

Web Site: [www.jct600.co.uk](http://www.jct600.co.uk)

E-Mail: [astonmartin.sales@jct600.co.uk](mailto:astonmartin.sales@jct600.co.uk)

### Arizona

#### Aston Martin Scottsdale

7111 E. Chauncey Lane, Scottsdale, Phoenix, AZ 85054

Telephone: (+1) 480 538 4300

Facsimile: (+1) 480 538 4305

Web Site: [www.astonmartinscottsdale.com](http://www.astonmartinscottsdale.com)

E-Mail:

### California

#### Aston Martin Marin

195 Casa Buena Drive, Corte Madera, CA 94925

Telephone: (+1) 415 496 2100

Facsimile: (+1) 415 496 2170

Web Site: [www.astonmartinmarin.com](http://www.astonmartinmarin.com)

E-Mail:

#### Aston Martin of Beverly Hills

8833 West Olympic Blvd., Beverly Hills, CA 90211

Telephone: (+1) 310 659 4050

Facsimile: (+1) 310 625 9656

Web Site: [www.astonmartinbeverlyhills.com](http://www.astonmartinbeverlyhills.com)

E-Mail:

#### Aston Martin of Newport Beach

1540 Jamboree Rd., CA 92660

Telephone: (+1) 949 999 5500

Facsimile: (+1) 949 999 5501

Web Site: [www.amofoc.com](http://www.amofoc.com)

E-Mail: [sales@amofoc.com](mailto:sales@amofoc.com)

**Aston Martin Los Gatos**

66 East Main St., Los Gatos, CA 95030

Telephone: (+1) 408 354 4000

Facsimile: (+1) 408 354 6285

Web Site: [www.astonmartinsiliconvalley.com](http://www.astonmartinsiliconvalley.com)

E-Mail:

**Desert European**

71-387 Highway 111, Rancho Mirage, CA 92270

Telephone: (+1) 760 773 5000

Facsimile: (+1) 760 773 4406

Web Site: [www.deserteuropean.com](http://www.deserteuropean.com)

E-Mail:

**Galpin Aston Martin**

15500 Roscoe Blvd., Van Nuys, CA 91406

Telephone: (+1) 818 894 3800

Facsimile: (+1) 818 922 3668

Web Site: [www.galpinastonmartin.com](http://www.galpinastonmartin.com)

E-Mail:

**Colorado**

**Sill-Terhar Aston Martin**

PO Box 344, Broomfield, Denver, CO 80038

Telephone: (+1) 303 469 1801

Facsimile: (+1) 720 284 0792

Web Site: [www.sthmotors.com](http://www.sthmotors.com)

E-Mail:

**Connecticut**

**Miller Motorcars Inc.**

275 West Putnam Ave., Greenwich, CT 06830

Telephone: (+1) 203 629 4726

Facsimile: (+1) 203 629 3418

Web Site: [www.millermotorcars.com](http://www.millermotorcars.com)

E-Mail:

**Florida**

**Aston Martin Naples**

850 Tamiami Trail North, Naples, FL 34102

Telephone: (+1) 866 603 6020

Facsimile: (+1) 239 262 2848

Web Site: [www.astonmartinnaples.com](http://www.astonmartinnaples.com)

E-Mail:

**Aston Martin Orlando**

4249 Millenia Blvd, Orlando, FL 32839

Telephone: (+1) 407 472 4880

Facsimile: (+1) 407 472 4899

Web Site: [www.astonmartinorlando.com](http://www.astonmartinorlando.com)

E-Mail:

---

**Aston Martin of Tampa Bay**

320 East Fletcher Ave., Tampa, FL 33612

Telephone: (+1) 813 371 8200

Facsimile: (+1) 813 371 8182

Web Site: [www.astonmartinoftampa.com](http://www.astonmartinoftampa.com)

E-Mail: [info@astonmartinoftampa.com](mailto:info@astonmartinoftampa.com)

**Aston Martin Palm Beach**

915 South Dixie Highway, West Palm Beach, FL 33401

Telephone: (+1) 561 659 6206

Facsimile: (+1) 561 832 7176

Web Site: [www.palmbeachmotorcars.com](http://www.palmbeachmotorcars.com)

E-Mail:

---

**The Collection**

200 Bird Rd., Coral Gables, FL 33146

Telephone: (+1) 305 476 2050

Facsimile: (+1) 786 924 5516

Web Site: [www.thecollection.com](http://www.thecollection.com)

E-Mail:

---

**Georgia****Aston Martin of Atlanta**

7865 Roswell Rd., Roswell, GA 30350

Telephone: (+1) 877-750-4824

Facsimile: (+1) 770-640-6026

Web Site: [www.astonmartinofatlanta.com](http://www.astonmartinofatlanta.com)

E-Mail:

---

**Illinois****Lake Forest Sports Cars Ltd.**

990 North Shore Drive, Lake Bluff, IL 60044

Telephone: (+1) 847 295 6560

Facsimile: (+1) 847 295 8849

Web Site: [www.ifsc.com](http://www.ifsc.com)

E-Mail: [sales@ifsc.com](mailto:sales@ifsc.com)

---

**Massachusetts****Aston Martin of New England**

85 Linden St., Waltham, MA 02452

Telephone: (+1) 781 547 5959

Facsimile: (+1) 781 547 5957

Web Site: [www.astonmartin-lotus.com](http://www.astonmartin-lotus.com)

E-Mail: [lotusmotor@aol.com](mailto:lotusmotor@aol.com)

## Michigan

### Aston Martin of Troy

1767 Maplelawn, Troy, MI 48084

Telephone: (+1) 248 643 6900

Facsimile: (+1) 248 643 9261

Web Site: [www.astonmartinoftroy.com](http://www.astonmartinoftroy.com)

E-Mail: [info@astonmartinoftroy.com](mailto:info@astonmartinoftroy.com)

## Missouri

### Aston Martin St. Louis

9 Arnage Blvd., Chesterfield, St. Louis, 63005

Telephone: (+1) 636-449-0000

Facsimile: (+1) 636-898-6473

Web Site: [www.jplv.net](http://www.jplv.net)

E-Mail:

## Nevada

### Gaudin Aston Martin of Las Vegas

7200 West Sahara Ave., Las Vegas, NV 89117

Telephone: (+1) 702 284 7000

Facsimile: (+1) 702 221 4422

Web Site: [www.jplv.net](http://www.jplv.net)

E-Mail:

## New Jersey

### F.C. Kerbeck Aston Martin

100 Route 73 North, Palmyra, NJ 08065

Telephone: (+1) 856 829 8200

Facsimile: (+1) 856 829 7009

Web Site: [www.fckerbeck.com](http://www.fckerbeck.com)

E-Mail: [info@fckerbeck.net](mailto:info@fckerbeck.net)

### Ray Catena Aston Martin

920 US Route 1, Edison, NJ 08817

Telephone: (+1) 732 205 9000

Facsimile: (+1) 732 205 9101

Web Site: [www.raycatena-astonmartin.com](http://www.raycatena-astonmartin.com)

E-Mail:

## New York

### Aston Martin Long Island

1060 Northern Blvd., Roslyn, NY 11576

Telephone: (+1) 516 478 4326

Facsimile: (+1) 516 478 4327

Web Site: [www.astonmartinlongisland.com](http://www.astonmartinlongisland.com)

E-Mail:

## North Carolina

### Aston Martin of Charlotte

416 Tyvola Rd., Charlotte, NC 28217

Telephone: (+1) 704 535 7100

Facsimile: (+1) 704 536 1777

Web Site: [www.fcicharlotte.com](http://www.fcicharlotte.com)

E-Mail:

### Foreign Cars Aston Martin

5603 Roanne Way, Greensboro, NC 27409

Telephone: (+1) 336 294 0200

Facsimile: (+1) 336 294 9109

Web Site: [www.foreigncarsitalia.com](http://www.foreigncarsitalia.com)

E-Mail:

## Ohio

### Midwestern Auto Group

6335 Perimeter Loop Rd., Dublin, OH 43017

Telephone: (+1) 614 889 2571

Facsimile: (+1) 614 793 7971

Web Site: [www.magastonmartin.com](http://www.magastonmartin.com)

E-Mail:

## Texas

### Aston Martin of Austin

12989 Research Blvd., Austin, TX 78750

Telephone: (+1) 512 918 1007

Facsimile: (+1) 512 249 9477

Web Site: [www.astonmartinofaustin.com](http://www.astonmartinofaustin.com)

E-Mail:

### Aston Martin Dallas

5333 Lemmon Ave., Dallas, TX 75209

Telephone: (+1) 214 522 1007

Facsimile: (+1) 214 353 3550

Web Site: [www.astonmartindallas.com](http://www.astonmartindallas.com)

E-Mail:

### Star Motor Cars

7000 Katy Rd., Houston, TX 77024

Telephone: (+1) 713 868 6813

Facsimile: (+1) 713 868 6814

Web Site: [www.starmotorcarsastonmartin.com](http://www.starmotorcarsastonmartin.com)

E-Mail: [amsales@starmotors.com](mailto:amsales@starmotors.com)

## Virginia

### Aston Martin Tysons

8545 Leesbueg Pike, Vienna, VA 22182

Telephone: (+1) 571 216 8244

Facsimile: (+1) 703 564 6345

Web Site: [www.astonmartintysons.com](http://www.astonmartintysons.com)

E-Mail:

## Washington

### Park Place Aston Martin

13710 NE 20th St., Bellevue, WA 98005

Telephone: (+1) 425 562 1000

Facsimile:

Web Site: [www.parkplaceastonmartin.com](http://www.parkplaceastonmartin.com)

E-Mail:



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



# Alphabetical Index

## A

|                                 |      |
|---------------------------------|------|
| Accessory Power Sockets .....   | 3.22 |
| Airbags .....                   | 3.11 |
| Front Passenger Sensing .....   | 3.13 |
| Alarm .....                     | 2.10 |
| Movement Sensor .....           | 2.10 |
| Reduced Guard .....             | 2.10 |
| Tilt Sensor .....               | 2.10 |
| Ambient Temperature .....       | 4.15 |
| Anti Corrosion Inspection ..... | A.9  |
| Anti-Lock Braking System .....  | 5.10 |
| Ashtray and Cigar Lighter ..... | 3.22 |
| Aston Martin Assistance .....   | B.1  |
| Aston Martin Warranty .....     | C.1  |
| Audio .....                     | 8.1  |
| Battery Protection Mode .....   | 8.6  |
| Essentials .....                | 8.2  |
| Satellite Radio Functions ..... | 8.11 |
| Authorised Body Repairers ..... | D.1  |

|                      |     |
|----------------------|-----|
| Automatic Lock ..... | 2.8 |
|----------------------|-----|

## B

|                                |       |
|--------------------------------|-------|
| Battery                        |       |
| Maintenance .....              | 11.25 |
| Protection Mode .....          | 8.6   |
| Battery Charge .....           | 11.25 |
| Battery Conditioner .....      | 11.25 |
| Battery Disposal .....         | 11.24 |
| Battery Protection Mode .....  | 11.26 |
| Bonnet Release .....           | 11.6  |
| Boot Cover .....               | 3.20  |
| Boot Lid .....                 | 2.7   |
| Brake Pad 'Bedding-in' .....   | 11.11 |
| Brakes                         |       |
| Anti-Lock Braking System ..... | 5.10  |
| Park Brake .....               | 5.11  |

## C

|                     |      |
|---------------------|------|
| Cabin Storage ..... | 3.18 |
|---------------------|------|

|                                       |       |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| Catalytic Converters .....            | 5.15  |
| Child Seats .....                     | 3.18  |
| Climate Control                       |       |
| Automatic Operation .....             | 6.6   |
| Controls .....                        | 6.2   |
| Manual Operation .....                | 6.6   |
| Operating Tips .....                  | 6.2   |
| Condensation, Headlamp Units .....    | 11.34 |
| Controls                              |       |
| Centre .....                          | 4.7   |
| Information and Warning Symbols ..... | 4.4   |
| Instrument Cluster .....              | 4.3   |
| Stalk .....                           | 4.10  |
| Cruise Control .....                  | 4.14  |

## D

|                            |      |
|----------------------------|------|
| Dangerous Substances ..... | 11.4 |
| Data Recording .....       | 1.3  |
| Day Time Running .....     | 4.11 |
| Dealer Directory .....     | E.1  |

|                                 |       |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| Defrosting and Demisting        |       |
| Automatic .....                 | 6.6   |
| Manual .....                    | 6.7   |
| Driving Techniques .....        | 5.18  |
| Dynamic Stability Control ..... | 5.12  |
| <b>E</b>                        |       |
| Electric Windows .....          | 3.23  |
| Emission Warranty .....         | 11.2  |
| Emotion Control Unit .....      | 2.2   |
| External Lamps .....            | 11.36 |
| <b>F</b>                        |       |
| Fluid Levels .....              | 11.7  |
| Footbrake .....                 | 5.10  |
| Front Passenger Sensing .....   | 3.13  |
| Front Seat Reset .....          | 11.38 |
| Fuel                            |       |
| Catalytic Converters .....      | 5.15  |
| Fuel Filling .....              | 5.14  |
| Fuse Boxes .....                | 11.28 |

## G

|                                    |      |
|------------------------------------|------|
| Garage Door Opener .....           | 2.12 |
| Garage Door Opener (Option)        |      |
| Operation .....                    | 2.13 |
| Programming .....                  | 2.13 |
| Reprogramming .....                | 2.14 |
| Rolling Code Synchronisation ..... | 2.14 |

## H

|                             |       |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| Hands-Free Phone .....      | 9.1   |
| Connecting a Phone .....    | 9.4   |
| Removing a Phone .....      | 9.6   |
| Using a Phone .....         | 9.7   |
| Headlamp .....              | 11.34 |
| Headlamp Alignment .....    | 11.35 |
| Headlamp Condensation ..... | 11.34 |
| Hill Start Assist .....     | 5.8   |
| Homesafe .....              | 2.9   |

## I

|                        |       |
|------------------------|-------|
| Interior Mirrors ..... | 3.5   |
| Internal Lamps .....   | 11.37 |

## J

|                                       |       |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| Jump Start From Another Vehicle ..... | 11.22 |
|---------------------------------------|-------|

## L

|                                       |      |
|---------------------------------------|------|
| Lamps .....                           | 4.11 |
| Locking the Vehicle .....             | 2.5  |
| Low Outside Temperature Warning ..... | 4.6  |

## M

|                                          |            |
|------------------------------------------|------------|
| Maintenance .....                        | 11.1, 11.5 |
| Vehicle Jacking .....                    | 11.3       |
| Maintenance Items                        |            |
| Battery Conditioner .....                | 11.6       |
| Tool Kit .....                           | 11.5       |
| Master Lamp .....                        | 4.11       |
| Master Vehicle Lock .....                | 2.6        |
| Memory Seats .....                       | 3.4        |
| Mirrors                                  |            |
| Auto Fold Function (Door Mirrors) .....  | 3.6        |
| Door .....                               | 3.6        |
| Interior .....                           | 3.5        |
| Power Fold Function (Door Mirrors) ..... | 3.6        |

Reverse Dip Function (Door Mirrors) ..... 3.7

## **P**

Park Brake ..... 5.11

Parking Assist

Front and Rear ..... 5.16

Rear Only ..... 5.17

Passive Anti-Theft System ..... 2.11

## **R**

Replacement of Airbag Units Record ..... A.10

Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners Record .... A.11

Restraints System ..... 3.7

Determining if the System is Operational ..... 3.8

## **S**

Safety Defects - Reporting ..... 1.4

Satellite Navigation ..... 10.1

Advanced Mode ..... 10.11

Advanced Mode Settings ..... 10.9

Demo ..... 10.5

Easy Mode ..... 10.6

Easy Mode Settings ..... 10.6

Map Updates ..... 10.2

System Controls ..... 10.3

Seat Adjustment ..... 3.2

Seat Adjustment - Sport Seat ..... 3.3

Seat Belts ..... 3.8

Care and Maintenance ..... 11.41

Child ..... 3.11

Seats

Memory Function ..... 3.4

Servicing ..... A.4

Specifications ..... 12.1

SportShift Transmission ..... 5.4

Paddle Shift Mode ..... 5.6

Steering Wheel ..... 3.5

Storage ..... 3.18

Supplemental Restraints System ..... 3.11

## **T**

Track Days ..... 5.19

Traction Control ..... 5.13

Transmission. Manual, ..... 5.9

Trip ..... 4.13

Tyre ..... 4.16

Tyre Sealant Kit ..... 11.19

## **U**

Unlocking the Vehicle ..... 2.4

## **V**

Vehicle Battery ..... 11.23

Vehicle Horn ..... 4.12

Vehicle Identification ..... 1.3

Vehicle Key ..... 2.2

Vehicle Recovery ..... 11.21

Vehicle Storage ..... 11.42

## **W**

Wheel Nut Torque ..... 12.6

Window Reset ..... 11.38

Windscreen Blade Replacement ..... 11.10

Wipers

Wiper ..... 4.11



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN